



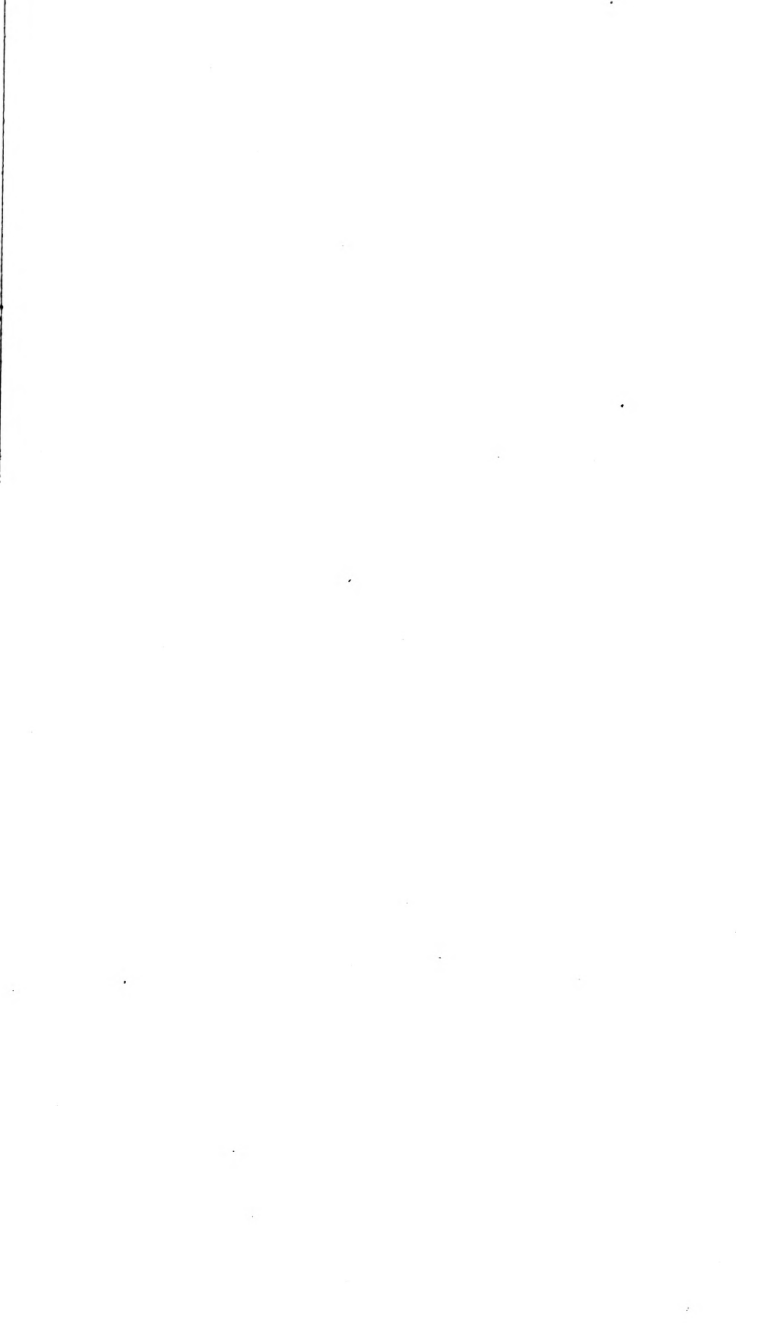
Class L 172

Book 1424











AN  
ABRIDGED HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

---

INTENDED AS A SEQUEL  
TO  
HILDRETH'S VIEW OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

B O S T O N :  
PUBLISHED BY CARTER, HENDEE & BABCOCK.

---

M DCCC XXXI.

ENTERED according to Act of Congress, in the year 1831,  
By CARTER, HENDEE & BABCOCK,  
in the Clerk's office of the District Court of Massachusetts

---

B O S T O N   C L A S S I C   P R E S S :

I. R. BUTTS.

## P R E F A C E .

---

It seems to be a well founded, as well as a very common opinion, that in a country of institutions so peculiar as ours, an acquaintance with the elements of history, and especially of our own history, ought to be made a prominent object of school education.

It has been often remarked by judicious teachers, that the abridgments of American history in general use, are not so well adapted as they might be, to attract the attention, and impress the memory of the pupil ; and I cannot but hope I am doing an acceptable service in offering them the choice of another book, in which an attempt has been made, to avoid some of the more obvious defects of preceding compilations.

My principal aim has been to be plain, brief, and accurate ; not so much to make reflections as to state facts ;

and avoiding all unnecessary details, to trace the general course of events with such clearness of arrangement and sprightliness of style, as the narrow limits of an abridgment would allow.

It has not been found very easy to digest the scattered fragments of our colonial history, into anything approaching a connected narrative ; and in the following parts, the transitions are sometimes too sudden, and many interesting matters are entirely omitted, or but slightly noticed. But such faults are incident to every abridgment. The present work is intended to exhibit only an outline of American history, sufficient for a text book, but requiring to be filled up, by the lectures of the teacher, and the pupil's subsequent reading.

---

# CONTENTS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

Voyage of the Cabots. — Origin of the claims of England to the territory of North America. — Florida discovered by Ponce de Leon. — Claims of Spain to the territory of North America. — Voyages of Verazzano and Cartier. — Claims of France. — The River Mississippi discovered. — Fisheries of Newfoundland. — General appearance of the country now the United States. — Its Inhabitants. — Attempts of the French to colonize Florida. — Patent and Voyages of Sir Humphrey Gilbert. — Sir Walter Raleigh's attempt to plant a colony. — Voyage of Bartholomew Gosnold. — Patents granted to the London and Plymouth Companies, . . . . . 1

## CHAPTER II.

Newport's First Voyage. — First Permanent Colony Landed in Virginia. — Jamestown Built. — Captain Smith. — His Adventures among the Indians — Wretched State of the Colony — Arrival of Lord Delaware. — Administration of Argal and Yearly. — First Colonial Assembly. — Prosperity of the Colony. — Massacre. — Indian War. — Virginia becomes a Royal Province. — Administration of Wyat, Hervey and Sir William Berkeley. — Grant and Settlement of Maryland, . . . . . 8

## CHAPTER III.

Plymouth Company. — The Puritans. — Plymouth Colony. — Other Attempts to Colonize New England. — Colony of Massachusetts Bay. — Boston founded. — First Settlements in Connecticut. —

Providence founded — Pequod War. — Internal Disputes. — Mrs Hutchinson. — Settlement of Rhode Island. — New Hampshire. — Colony of New Haven. — Harvard College founded. — Emigration from England ceases. — Union of the New England Colonies. — Province of Maine. — Indians of New England. — Praying Indians. — Persecution of the Quakers. — State of the English Colonies at the Restoration, . . . . . 16

## CHAPTER IV.

Restoration of Charles II. — The Navigation Act. — Origin and History of the Province of the New Netherlands. — Swedish Settlements on the Delaware. — Conquest of the New Netherlands. — Province of New York; Province of New Jersey. — Grant and Settlement of Carolina. — Affairs of Virginia. — Bacon's Rebellion, . . . . . 36

## CHAPTER V.

Affairs of New England. — Philip's War. — New Hampshire made a Distinct Province. — Grant and Settlement of Pennsylvania. — The three Counties on the Delaware. — Massachusetts Charter declared void. — Sir Edmund Andros governor of New England. — Affairs of New York. — Leisler's Rebellion. — New Charter of Massachusetts. — Salem Witchcraft. . . . . 42

## CHAPTER VI.

Effect on the Colonies of the accession of King William. — French Settlements in Acadie and Canada. — The Five Nations. — Population of the Colonies at the beginning of the first French and Indian War. — Destruction of Schenectady. — Commissioners meet at New York. — Port Royal taken. — Destruction of York and Oyster River. — Expedition against Quebec. — Port Royal recovered by the French. — Peace of Ryswick, 1697. — War Renewed. — Deerfield destroyed. — Port Royal taken. — Unsuccessful Attempt on Quebec. — Peace of Utrecht, 1711. — Affairs of the Middle and Southern Colonies. — Wars with the Southern Indians. — Carolina becomes a Royal Province, . . . . . 52

## CHAPTER VII.

Affairs of New England. — Lovewell's War. — Controversy in Massachusetts respecting the Governor's Salary. — Grant and Settle-



ment of Georgia. — War between England and Spain. — Oglethorpe lays siege to St Augustine. — Spaniards invade Georgia. — Third French and Indian War. — Expedition against Louisburg. — The Colonies alarmed by a French Fleet. — Peace of Aix la Chapelle, 1748, . . . . . 60

## CHAPTER VIII.

Disputes between the French and English respecting the boundaries of their North American Colonies. — French Colony of Louisiana. — Respective strength of the French and English Colonies. — Mission of major Washington. — Battle of the Great Meadows. — Scheme for a Union of the Colonies. — Expedition to Nova Scotia. — Removal of the Acadiens. — Braddock's defeat. — Defeat of Dieskau. — Treaty with the Cherokees. — Forts at Oswego, and fort William Henry taken by Montcalm. — Great exertions of the Colonies. — Louisburg taken. — Abercrombie repulsed at Ticonderoga. — Fort Frontinac surrenders. — Fort Du Quesne deserted by the French. — Amherst drives the French from Ticonderoga and Crown Point. — Fort Niagara taken. — Wolfe sails for Quebec. — Battle of Quebec. — The City surrenders. — Battle of Sillery. — Montreal, and the other French posts capitulate. — War with the Cherokees. — Peace of Fontainebleau, 1763. — War with the Western Indians. — Peace, . . . . . 64

## CHAPTER IX.

Nature of the connexion between the Colonies and the Mother Country. — Stamp Act. — Congress at New York. — Repeal of the Stamp Act. — Duties on paper, glass, &c. — Discontent of the Colonies. — Duties repealed except that on tea. — Boston Massacre. — Insurrection in North Carolina. — Vessels loaded with tea sail for America. — Their reception. — Boston Port Bill. — First Congress at Philadelphia. — Battle of Lexington. — Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken. — Battle of Bunker Hill. — Second Congress at Philadelphia. — Washington appointed Commander-in-chief. — Expedition against Canada. — Assault on Quebec. — Boston evacuated. — Attack on Charleston. — Declaration of Independence. — Population of the United States, . . . . . 73

## CHAPTER X.

Howe arrives before New York. — Battle of Long Island. — New York evacuated. — Battle of White Plains. — Fort Washington

taken by storm. — Fort Lee abandoned. — Washington retreats through the Jerseys. — Battle of Trenton. — Battle of Princeton. — Washington recovers the Jerseys, and takes post at Morristown. — Organization of the Army. — Stores destroyed at Peekskill. — At Duxbury. — Meig's expedition to Long Island. — Howe sails for the Chesapeake. — Lands at the head of Elk. — Battle of Brandywine. — Wayne surprised. — Philadelphia evacuated. — Battle of Germantown. — Battle of Red Bank. — Attack on fort Mifflin. — Communication opened between the British army and fleet, 92

## CHAPTER XI.

Affairs of the Northern department. — Naval engagement on Lake Champlain. — Burgoyne invests Ticonderoga. — Ticonderoga evacuated. — Action at Hubbardton. — Fort Anne evacuated. — St Leger invests fort Schuyler. — Defeats Herkimer. — Battle of Bennington. — Siege of fort Schuyler raised. — First battle of Stillwater. — Second battle of Stillwater. — Retreat of Burgoyne. — His army capitulates. — Posts at the highlands taken by the British. — They evacuate the forts on lake Champlain. — Washington is reinforced. — He goes into winter quarters at Valley Forge, 105

## CHAPTER XII.

Retrospect. — The States. — Congress. — The Confederation. — Paper Money. — The Loyalists. — Indian affairs. — Story of Miss M'Crea. — Treatment of prisoners. — Maritime exertions. — Wants and sufferings of the army. — Combination against general Washington. — Alliance with France. — Lord North's attempt at reconciliation, 114

## CHAPTER XIII.

The British evacuate Philadelphia. — Battle of Monmouth. — A French fleet arrives. — Battle of Rhode Island. — Skirmishes. — Destruction of Wyoming. — Theatre of war transferred to the South. — Savannah taken by the British. — Georgia submits. — Lincoln takes command of the Southern army. — Insurrection of the Loyalists. — Engagement at Briar's Creek. — Charleston besieged. — Engagement at Stono Ferry. — Affairs of the North. — Sullivan's expedition against the Six Nations. — Arrival of a French fleet. — Siege of Savannah. — Spain takes part in the war, 120

## CHAPTER XIV.

Clinton's expedition against South Carolina. — Siege of Charleston — Affair at Monk's corner. — Charleston capitulates. — Affair of the Washaws. — South Carolina submits. — Exploits of Sumpter. — Gates appointed to command the Southern army. — Battle of Camden. — Defeat of Sumpter. — Affairs of the North. — Treachery of Arnold. — Action of King's Mountain. — Greene takes command of the Southern army. — Battle of the Cowpens. — Greene's retreat through North Carolina. — Battle of Guilford. — Cornwallis retires to Wilmington. — Greene advances into South Carolina. — Battle of Hobkirk Hill. — British posts taken by Morgan. — Rawdon retires towards Charleston. — Siege of Ninety Six. — Battle of Eutaw, 127

## CHAPTER XV.

State of the Army. — Revolt of the Pennsylvania line. — Reforms in the Executive Departments. — Robert Morris superintendent of Finance. — Operations of Cornwallis and La Fayette in Virginia. — Arrival of a French fleet. — Resolution to act against Cornwallis. — New London destroyed. — Cornwallis surrenders. — Treaty of peace. — New York evacuated by the British army. — Army disbanded. — Washington resigns his commission, 137

## CHAPTER XVI.

Defects of the confederation. — Weakness of Congress. — The public debt. — Difficulties with Great Britain. — Depressed state of Commerce. — Meeting of Commissioners at Annapolis. — A general colverction recommended. — State of parties. — Insurrection in Massachusetts. — The convention meets. — The constitution formed. — Parties for and against it. — The Federalist. — The State conventions. — Constitution accepted by ten States. — Time fixed for its operation to commence, 144

## CHAPTER XVII.

Washington elected first President. — His journey from Mount Vernon to New York. — First session of Congress. — A revenue provided. — Other laws. — Heads of departments. — President visits New England. — Second session of Congress. — Public debt funded. — Debates on this subject. — Indian wars. — Treaty with the Creeks. — Harmer defeated. — Bank of the United States. — Vermont and Kentucky admitted into the Union. — President's southern tour. — First census. — Commerce and Navigation, 148

## CHAPTER XVIII.

Indian war. — St Clair appointed to the chief command. — Battle near the Miami villages. — St Clair retreats. — Army increased. — Mint established. — State of parties. — Mr Hamilton. — Mr Jefferson. — Federalists. — Republicans, or Democrats. — Opposition to the Administration. — Disturbances in the west of Pennsylvania. — Charges against Mr Hamilton — Not sustained. — The French revolution. — Its effect on parties in the United States. — War in Europe. — Washington's proclamation of neutrality. — Citizen Genet. — Democratic societies. — Genet recalled. — Resignation of Mr Jefferson. — Mr Madison's commercial resolutions. — Embargo. — Preparations for war. — Mission of Mr Jay. — Hamilton and Knox resign.	155
---	-----

## CHAPTER XIX.

Navigation of the Mississippi. — Kentucky remonstrance. — War with the Indians. — Wayne's victory. — Insurrection in Pennsylvania. — President calls out the militia. — Insurrection suppressed. — Jay's treaty. — Its unpopularity. — It is ratified by the President. — Peace of Grenville with the northwestern Indians. — Treaty with Spain. — Treaty with Algiers. — Proceedings in Congress respecting Jay's treaty. — Mr Monroe recalled, and Mr Pinkney appointed envoy to France. — Mr Randolph resigns. — Tennessee admitted into the Union. — Candidates for the presidency. — Mr Adams elected,	161
---	-----

6

## CHAPTER XX.

State of affairs with France. — Mr Pinkney not received. — Mission of Pinkney, Gerry and Marshall. — Treaty with France annulled. — Reception of the American envoys. — Preparations for war. — Naval engagements. — Mission of Ellsworth, Davie and Murray. — Convention with France. — Death of Washington. — Seat of government removed to the District of Columbia. — Canvass for the Presidency. — Mr Marshall secretary of State. — Courts of the United States reorganized.	172
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXI.

Mr Jefferson elected president. — Reduction of the army and navy. — Repeal of Mr Adams' judiciary act. — Ohio admitted into the
---

Union. — Purchase of Louisiana. — Expedition of Lewis and Clarke. — War with Tripoli. — The Philadelphia taken — Destroyed by Decatur. — Tripoli bombarded. — Sidi Joussouf, Bashaw of Tripoli. — Eaton's arrangement with Hamet. — Derne taken. — Treaty with Tripoli. — Trial of colonel Burr, . . . . . 175

## CHAPTER XXII.

Flourishing state of American commerce. — Depredations renewed. — Berlin decree. — Impressment of American seamen. — Affair of the Chesapeake. — Proclamation of the president. — Admiral Berkeley recalled. — British orders in council. — Milan decree. — Embargo. — Its unpopularity in the eastern states. — Decree of Bayonne. — Non-intercourse acts. — Mr Madison president. — Erskine's treaty. — Not ratified. — Mr Jackson. — Decree of Rambouillet. — Act of May, 1810. — Alleged repeal of the Berlin and Milan decrees. — Reparation for the attack on the Chesapeake. — Refusal of the British government to revoke the orders in council. — Affair of the Little Belt. — Battle of Tippecanoe. — War declared against Great Britain. — Orders in council revoked. — Louisiana admitted into the Union, . . . . . 186

## CHAPTER XXIII.

War commenced under unfavorable circumstances. — Preparations for the invasion of Canada. — Campaign of 1812. — Hull's surrender. — He is succeeded by general Harrison. — Battle of the river Raisin. — Massacre of prisoners. — Battle of Queenstown. — General Smyth. — Naval affairs. — Success of the American frigates. — Session of congress. — Re-election of Mr Madison. — Commissioners for negotiating a peace. — Taxes. — Campaign of 1813. — Blockade of the coast. — Admiral Cockburn. — Naval Engagements. — Creek war. — Battle of the Great Bend. — Submission of the southern Indians. — Affairs on the Niagara frontier. — York taken. — Sackett's harbor attacked. — Battle of Stony Creek. — Battle of the Beaver dams. — Wilkinson's invasion of Canada. — Newark burned. — Desolation of the Niagara frontier. — Affairs of the northwest. — Siege of fort Meigs — Of fort Stevenson. — Perry's victory on Lake Erie. — Advance of Harrison. — Battle of the Thames. — Peace with the northwestern Indians, . . . . . 191

## CHAPTER XXIV.

State of affairs at the beginning of 1814. — Campaign of 1814. — Battle of Chippewa. — Battle of Niagara. — Assault on fort Erie. —

Sortie. — Battle of Plattsburg. — M'Donough's naval victory. — British expedition up the Chesapeake. — Battle of Bladensburg. — Capture of Washington. — Capitulation of Alexandria. — Battle of Baltimore. — Naval affairs. — Expedition against New Orleans. — Battle of New Orleans. — Peace. — Situation of the country. — Hartford Convention. — Beneficial results of the war, . . . 210

## CHAPTER XXV.

Measures of Congress. — War with Algiers. — Bank of the United States. — State of the currency. — Mr Monroe elected president. — Commercial speculations. — Emigration. — Indiana admitted into the Union. — Mississippi. — Illinois. — Alabama. — Maine. — Missouri. — The Missouri question. — Cession of Florida. — Pensions granted to the revolutionary soldiers. — Canvass for the presidency. — Mr Adams chosen. — He is succeeded by general Jackson, 221

## A P P E N D I X .

Kings of England, France and Spain during the times of the colonies	223
Presidents of the Continental Congress . . . . .	229
Principal officers under the Federal Constitution . . . . .	229
Population of the United States . . . . .	232

AN

# ABRIDGED HISTORY

OF THE

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

### CHAPTER I.

Voyage of the Cabots. — Origin of the claims of England to the territory of North America. — Florida discovered by Ponce de Leon. — Claims of Spain to the territory of North America. — Voyages of Verazzano and Cartier. — Claims of France. — The River Mississippi discovered. — Fisheries of Newfoundland — General appearance of the country now the United States. — Its Inhabitants. — Attempts of the French to colonize Florida. — Patent and Voyages of Sir Humphrey Gilbert. — Sir Walter Raleigh's attempt to plant a Colony. — Voyage of Bartholomew Gosnold. — Patents granted to the London and Plymouth Companies.

THE discovery of a new continent by Christopher Columbus, excited universal attention throughout Europe.

1492 All the maritime states were eager to extend their commerce, and to enlarge their dominions, by acquiring territories in this new and unexplored region. The English people, had lately turned their attention to navigation and commerce. They participated in the common enthusiasm; and within five years after Columbus' first voyage, John Cabot and his son Sebastian, two Venetian adventurers, who had settled in England, obtained from Henry VIII. king of that country, a commission to undertake a voyage of discovery. They were furnished with two vessels by the merchants of London and Bristol; and

1497 having sailed westwardly, till they reached the island of Newfoundland, they then steered towards the south, and coasted along the shores of North America for a great distance. They erected crosses along the coast, and took formal possession in behalf of the crown of Eng-

land ; but their provisions having failed, and a mutiny having broken out among their mariners, they returned home without having attempted either settlement or conquest.

It was a rule among the European States, and is still received as a principle of the law of nations, that newly discovered countries belong to the discoverers. In virtue of this rule, and in right of the discovery by the Cabots, the English claimed those extensive territories in North America, which they afterwards colonized. But the Reformation, which began in England about this time, and other domestic affairs of great interest and importance, for a long time, engrossed the public attention. The voyage of the Cabots was almost forgotten ; and more than sixty years elapsed, before the English nation made any attempts to prosecute their American discoveries.

Meanwhile, the coast was visited, and discoveries were occasionally made by various navigators. Juan  
1512 Ponce de Leon, a Spanish commander, as he was sailing northwardly from Porto Rico, discovered and named the coast of FLORIDA.\* He took possession of the country, in the name of his sovereign, Charles V., returned to Porto Rico, and afterwards sailed for Spain, where he obtained a commission, as governor of the country he had discovered. He returned to Florida, with the design of planting a colony, but had scarcely landed, when the natives attacked his company with poisoned arrows, killed the greater part of them, and obliged the rest to abandon the country. On this discovery of Ponce de Leon, the Spaniards founded their claims to the territory of Florida,—a name, which originally included all the more southerly part of what is now the United States.

In 1524, John de Verazzano, a Florentine,† in the em-

\* So called from its blooming appearance ; or as others say, because it was discovered on Palm Sunday, called by the Spaniards, Pascha Florida,—the feast of flowers.

† At this period of the world, the inhabitants of the north of Italy, the Venetians, Genoese and Florentines, were more engaged in commerce than any other people, and were much better skilled in the art of navigation. Of the adventurers, who first explored the shores of the new continent, Columbus, Amerigo, Verazzano, and the Cabots were Italians. But the Italian states were already on the decline. These great discoverers were not employed by their native cities. They sailed in the service of foreign princes ; Spain, France, and England profited by



ploy of Francis I., king of France, sailed seven  
 1524 hundred leagues, along the coast of North America, and examined the shores of Florida with considerable accuracy. But in a voyage, which he made the next year, he and all his companions perished by some unknown disaster. In 1534, the French renewed  
 1534 their enterprises under Jacques Cartier. This able navigator discovered and named the *Gulf of St Lawrence*. The next year he discovered the *river St Lawrence*, and ascended that noble stream a distance of three hundred leagues. He took possession of the territory bordering on the river, in the name of the French king; built a fort, formed alliances with the natives, and wintered in the country. On his return, he endeavored to prevail on the king of France to send out a colony; but a war was at this time, just breaking out between France and Spain, and the solicitations of Cartier were dis-  
 1540 regarded. In 1540, however, an attempt was made to plant a French colony in Canada. The king of France entrusted the command of the enterprise to John Francois de la Roche. Cartier attended him, as pilot of the voyage. They arrived in Canada, well supplied with men, military stores, and provisions; but they met with no success, and at the end of two years abandoned the enterprise. The voyages and discoveries of Verazzano and Cartier, were the foundation of the claims of France, to the continent of North America.

In 1539, Ferdinand de Soto, at that time, the Governor of Cuba, where there was a flourishing Spanish colony, landed on the coast of Florida, with an army of near a thousand men. He fought many battles with the natives; penetrated far into the interior; and, in the spring  
 1542 of 1542, reached the banks of the *Mississippi*. Here he died; and the remains of his army which had been much reduced by fatigue and hard fighting, built small vessels, sailed down the river, and landed at the Spanish settlements in Mexico. Soto's discoveries were not prosecuted, and more than a hundred years elapsed before the *Mississippi* was again visited by white men.

By this time the fisheries on the banks of Newfoundland  
 the science of Italy, and acquired vast possessions in America, where no Italian state ever possessed a foot of territory.

land had become known, and were frequented  
1550 by the vessels of various nations. The fishermen erected huts on that island, for the convenience of their business; but, as yet, no successful attempt had been made to settle the continent.

In some respects, the country was little inviting. It was almost wholly covered by forests, which gave it a wild and dreary appearance. The air, hidden by the thick foliage from the purifying influence of the sun, became stagnant. In many places, unhealthy vapors rose from the waters and low grounds; while the rivers, choked by fallen trees, and the rank vegetation which loaded their banks, spread out into extensive marshes. Yet the natural advantages of the country were many. It abounded with rich interval lands, and extensive and fertile plains. It produced the finest timber, and was intersected by numerous deep and navigable rivers. Its coasts were washed, for more than a thousand miles, by the Atlantic Ocean, and furnished some of the best harbors in the world.

This extensive country was very thinly inhabited by a race of men, to whom the Europeans gave the appellation of *Indians*.\* The Indians were divided into a great number of small tribes, which had established their little towns, along the sea-shore, and at the falls of the rivers. These tribes were united in confederacies of greater or less extent; and the neighboring confederacies were engaged in almost perpetual war. Very various and discordant languages were spoken by the different tribes. But they all had a strong resemblance in complexion and features; and their manners and way of living were everywhere, much alike. They were ignorant of the use of metals; they had no domestic animals, not even dogs; they lived in little huts rudely built of bark, or the branches of trees; and spent a considerable part of their time in complete idleness. The women cultivated a little corn and a few vegetables, and gathered wild berries from the woods; but the men disdained any other employments than fishing, hunting, and war.

The first European settlement, within the present bounds of the United States, was made on the coast of

\* When Columbus discovered the continent of America, he supposed it to be a part of *India*; and hence the name of *Indians* came to be applied to the native Americans.

1562 Florida, by a colony of French protestants. This colony was projected by the celebrated Coligny, at that time, one of the principal leaders of the protestants of France. Two ships were fitted out, and placed under the command of John Ribault. Having landed his people on the coast of Florida, and built a fort for their protection, Ribault returned home for supplies. During his absence, the settlers were reduced to the last extremity. Urged to great exertions by the necessity of their situation, they built and rigged a rude vessel, in which they set sail for France. Two years after, the scheme of settlement was renewed. Laudonniere built fort Caroline\* on the river of May, and planted a colony there. Ribault arrived the next year with supplies and reinforcements. But the country, where this colony was planted, was claimed by Spain, as a part of her territory of Florida; and a Spanish expedition, under Don Pedro Melendes, took fort Caroline by assault, massacred the garrison, and broke up the settlement. Melendes built three forts on the coast of Florida, and garrisoned them with Spanish troops.

The King of France took no notice of this aggression. But the massacre of the French colonists, was avenged by the chevalier Dominique de Gourges, a French soldier of fortune, who fitted out an expedition at his own expense, took the Spanish forts, and put their garrisons to the sword.

After destroying the forts, he returned home without attempting any settlement. Thus ended the attempts of the French to colonize Florida.

During the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the English people had made great advances in commerce and navigation. The spirit of adventure was revived among them; and serious plans for settling colonies in America, began to be

entertained. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a gentleman of rank and character, obtained a patent from the Queen, granting him ample power for this purpose. He made two attempts to carry his design into execution; one, the same year he obtained his patent; the other, in 1583. In the first expedition, he encountered a violent storm, lost one of his ships, and was obliged to re-

\* From this fort, the coast was called *Carolina*, and hence the names of two of the United States. The geographical situation of these early French colonies is not very accurately ascertained.

turn without crossing the Atlantic. In a second he reached St Johns, in the island of Newfoundland, where he found about thirty vessels of different nations engaged in carrying on the fisheries. He took possession of the island in the name of Queen Elizabeth, and made some preparations for establishing a colony; but on his voyage home, the vessel in which he sailed foundered at sea, and all on board perished.

Not discouraged by these mischances, Sir Walter Raleigh, Gilbert's half brother, and the companion of his first voyage, a man of such enterprise and abilities as render him famous in the history of England, obtained a new patent from the Queen, similar to that which had been granted to Gilbert. He immediately despatched Amidas and Barlow, two experienced commanders, to examine the country he intended to settle. Having arrived, after a prosperous voyage, on the coast of what is now North Carolina, they touched, first, at an island, which they called *Wocokon*, and afterwards at *Roanoke*, near the entrance of Albermarle Sound. At both places, they traded with the natives, who received them with the greatest hospitality. The splendid descriptions, given by Amidas and Barlow, of the country they had visited, so delighted Elizabeth, that she bestowed on it the name of VIRGINIA, as a memorial of its discovery during the reign of a virgin queen.

The success of this voyage inspired Raleigh with new zeal. Early the next spring, he fitted out seven ships, under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, well furnished with everything necessary to begin a settlement. Grenville arrived on the coast in June; and having spent some time in exploring the country, fixed on Roanoke, an incommodious station, without any safe harbor, as the place for establishing the colony. He left here 108 men, under the command of Mr Lane, and in August, returned to England.

Instead of cultivating the ground, the colonists employed themselves in searching for mines of gold and silver. They quarrelled, too, with the natives; their provisions began to fail; and their situation had become very uncomfortable, when they were visited by Sir Francis Drake, the celebrated English Admiral, who was returning from a successful

1586 expedition against the Spaniards in the West Indies. He received the discouraged colonists on board his fleet, and set sail for England.

Lane and his companions, by constant intercourse with the Indians, had acquired a habit of using tobacco. They carried a quantity home with them, and taught their countrymen the method of using it. In a few years its use became very general, and it has ever formed one of the chief staples of the Southern States.

Soon after the departure of Drake, Grenville arrived at Roanoke, bringing ample supplies of men and provisions. Having searched in vain for the colony he had left, he landed a number of men with provisions for two years, in order to retain possession of the country, and then returned home.

Notwithstanding the ill success which had thus far attended his efforts at planting a colony, Raleigh was not yet discouraged. He fitted out a new expedition, under the command of Captain White, consisting of three ships and 115 colonists. They landed at Roanoke, and repaired the houses of the former adventurers, which still remained standing. White returned home to obtain further supplies. But he found the nation in universal alarm. Philip II. of Spain was assembling a great fleet, with an intention to invade England; and all were too much engrossed with fears for their own safety, to attend to any more remote object. It was three years before supplies  
1590 were sent to Roanoke, and when they arrived, not one of the colonists was found alive. They had perished by famine, or by the attack of the neighboring Indians.

No further attempts to colonize America were made, till in 1602, the voyage of Bartholomew Gosnold revived, again, the spirit of adventure. It had  
1602 ~~revived~~ hitherto been the custom, in sailing for Virginia, to steer first, for the West Indies. Gosnold avoided this unnecessary circuit, and was the first English commander, who reached the continent by a direct course. He discovered *Cape Cod*; landed on the coast, and visited several of the adjacent islands. Having returned to England, he gave so inviting a description of the country he had visited, that new plans for the establishment of colonies, began to

be formed. Richard Hacluyt, a clergyman of distinguished learning and intelligence, contributed much, by able and judicious measures, and especially by a valuable collection of voyages, published about this time, to give popularity to this new project of settlement.

James I. had now succeeded to the throne of England. He divided Virginia, (under which name the whole coast, south of Newfoundland, was included) into two colonies, the *Northern* and *Southern*; and established two companies, for the purpose of making settlements, called the *London* and *Plymouth* companies. The London company was authorized to establish colonies in south Virginia; north Virginia was assigned to the Plymouth company.

## CHAPTER II.

Newport's First Voyage. — First Permanent Colony Landed in Virginia. — Jamestown Built. — Captain Smith. — His Adventures among the Indians. — Wretched State of the Colony. — Arrival of Lord Delaware. — Administration of Argal and Yearly. — First Colonial Assembly. — Prosperity of the Colony. — Massacre. — Indian War. — Virginia becomes a Royal Province. — Administration of Wyat, Hervey and Sir William Berkley. — Grant and Settlement of Maryland.

As soon as the London company had obtained their charter, they fitted out three vessels under the  
 1607 command of Christopher Newport, and put on board a hundred emigrants, and the necessary materials for establishing a colony. Newport sailed for Roanoke, but, by a fortunate storm was driven into *Chesapeake bay*, which was now, for the first time, visited by Europeans. After exploring the country, the emigrants determined to settle on the river Powhatan. They selected a spot about fifty miles up the river, cut down the trees, built houses, and thus laid the foundation of the  
 May 13 first permanent English town established in America. In honor of king James they called it *Jamestown*; and the river on which it stood, they named *James River*. Notwithstanding its antiquity, Jamestown

never became either populous or opulent, and it has now, for several years, been entirely deserted.\*

The colony was to be governed by a president and council. But the council itself was soon involved in disputes, and Captain Smith, the most able man of their number, on some frivolous pretence, was excluded from his seat. These disorders were, in some degree composed, by the judicious management of Mr Hunt, the chaplain. But the colony soon began to suffer from want of provisions, from disease, and the hostility of the natives. Wingfield, the president, was detected in an attempt to escape in their only vessel. He was deposed, and Captain Ratcliffe chosen in his place. But in the present danger and distress, the talents of Smith, the very man whom, a little while before, they had attempted to exclude from the council, because so conspicuous, that all real authority was entrusted in his hands. He inspired the others with a portion of his own spirit; built such fortifications as were necessary to resist the sudden attacks of the Indians, and as the season for gathering corn approached, penetrated into the surrounding country, at the head of small parties, and by presents and caresses, among the well disposed part of the natives, and open force among the hostile, obtained abundant supplies.

On one of these expeditions, as he was exploring the head of the Chickahominy river, attended by a single Indian guide, he was surrounded by a large party of the natives, and after a gallant defence, was taken prisoner. They would have killed him on the spot; but he showed them a mariner's compass, which so excited their admiration, that, for the present, they spared his life. They carried him before Powhatan, the principal sachem, or chief, in that neighborhood, who received him with great ceremony. He was carefully attended; water was brought in which to wash his hands; and he was feasted in the best Indian fashion. But notwithstanding all this apparent kindness, after much consultation, it was determined that he should be put to death. He was dragged to the ground, and his head placed upon a stone. A club was raised to dash out his brains; when

\* In 1807, when the 200th anniversary of the settlement of Virginia was celebrated, the only remaining vestiges of Jamestown, were a few old tombstones, and the ruins of a church steeple.

Pocahontas, the sachem's favorite daughter, a child but ten or twelve years old, not able to save him by her prayers and entreaties, rushed through the crowd, clasped his head in her arms, and laying her own upon it, arrested the fatal blow. By this act of generous impulse, she prevailed on her father to spare his life; and after a great many ceremonies between him and the Indians, he was sent back, in safety, to Jamestown.

He found the colony in great distress, and reduced to *thirtyeight* persons, who were just on the point of abandoning the country. By mingled threats and entreaties, he persuaded them to remain. He obtained from the Indians, among whom he was now in great esteem, an abundant supply of provisions; and preserved plenty in the colony till Newport arrived, with two vessels, bringing supplies and reinforcements. The arrival of Newport gave great relief and joy to the colonists. But their prospects were soon overcast; for unluckily, about this time, they discovered, in the bed of a small stream near Jamestown, a glittering earth, which they mistook for gold dust. A sort of universal phrensy was excited by this discovery; everything else was neglected; and there was no thought or conversation but about digging, washing, and refining gold. A ship was despatched to England laden with fancied wealth. But, in the meantime, the colonists suffered severely from the severity of the winter; their store-house was accidentally burned, and they were reduced to great distress.

During the next summer, Smith was employed in exploring the Chesapeake Bay. He sailed more than three  
1608 thousand miles, in an open boat, and examined, with the greatest care and labor, every river and inlet, on both sides the bay. He drew an excellent map of his discoveries, which he transmitted to England, accompanied with a description of the country and inhabitants. On his return from this expedition, he was chosen president of the colony.

The London Company, though little pleased with the success of their efforts, resolved still to persevere.  
1609 They obtained a new charter; a large number of noblemen and merchants were added to the company; and nine ships, with 900 emigrants, and a supply of provisions, sailed for Virginia, under the joint command of



Newport, Somers and Gates. The vessel, on board of which were the three commanders, encountered a violent storm, and was cast away on one of the Bermuda islands. The other ships arrived in safety. Many of the company that came in them, were poor gentlemen, broken tradesmen, rakes and libertines, men little calculated to advance the prosperity of the enterprise. Headed by a number of seditious persons, who aspired to the chief command, they threw the colony into the utmost confusion, and it was only by very vigorous measures, that Smith was enabled to maintain his authority.

To rid himself, in part, of these troublesome guests, he established two new settlements, one at the falls of James River,\* the other, at Nasemond.† The new settlers conducted with so little judgment, as soon to make all the neighboring Indians their enemies. A plot was formed for the destruction of the whole colony. But it was defeated by the wisdom of Smith, and the fidelity of Pocahontas, who, in a dark and stormy night, went to Jamestown at the hazard of her life, and informed the colonists of their danger. Smith had the address to bring about a peace; but the colony was soon after deprived of his faithful services. As he was sleeping in his boat, his powder bag took fire, and he was so severely wounded by the explosion, as to be confined to his bed. There was no surgeon in Virginia, skilful enough to heal his wounds, and he found himself obliged to embark for England.

The colony, when Smith left it, consisted of 500 inhabitants, well supplied with arms and provisions; but by their own folly and insubordination, they were soon reduced to the greatest extremities. They experienced all the miseries of famine, and for many years after, this period was well remembered by the name of *The Starving Time*. In six months, there were only *sixty* colonists alive; and these so feeble and dejected, that without relief they could not have survived ten days longer. They were rescued from this calamitous situation by Gates, Somers and Newport, who arrived from Bermuda the 24th of May. It was immediately determined to abandon the

1610

\* Near the present situation of Richmond.

† On the river Nasemond, not far from where Norfolk now stands.

country, and the few remaining colonists had embarked on board the vessels just arrived from Bermuda, when Lord Delaware, who had been appointed governor of the colony, came up the river with three ships, and a supply of men and provisions. He prevailed on them to return, and by a judicious exercise of authority, once more restored order and contentment.

For the next three years, the colony kept along without making any great advances, but in 1613, two events occurred of great and lasting importance.

The first of these events, was the marriage of Mr Rolfe, one of the settlers, with Pocahontas, the young Indian woman to whom the colony was already so much indebted. This marriage secured a firm and lasting peace with the Indians. Pocahontas embraced Christianity, and was carried by her husband to England, where she received the greatest attentions. Several of the most respectable families of Virginia, boast their descent from this marriage. The other event above alluded to, was the distribution of land among the planters, who were thus induced to much greater industry than when all the land was held in common, as had hitherto been the case, and all the produce carried into a common grainery.

Still, the progress of the colony was by no means rapid.

For when governor Argal arrived in Virginia, he found the public buildings at Jamestown fallen to decay, and only five or six private houses fit to be inhabited. The planters, who did not exceed 400, were principally employed in cultivating tobacco; and were dispersed in various places, as best suited their convenience or caprice. Argal's government was extremely severe.

He was succeeded by Yeardley; who called the first colonial assembly of Virginia. It consisted of the Governor, the council, and delegates from the different plantations which, at this time, were seven in number.

Hitherto but few females had crossed the Atlantic. But in 1620, a large number of girls were brought over, and disposed of among the young planters.

The price of a wife was, at first, one hundred pounds of tobacco; but as the planters learned, by experience, the sweets of matrimony, the demand for wives in-

creased, and the price rose to one hundred and fifty pounds. The same year, a Dutch vessel brought twenty negroes to Jamestown, and exposed them for sale. This was the beginning of negro slavery in Virginia.

During the next three years, numerous planters arrived from England, and the settlements were extended along the banks of James and York Rivers, and even as far as the Rappahannoc and Potomac. But this ill-fated colony was doomed to experience yet another severe reverse of fortune. Powhatan, the Indian sachem, was now dead. He had been succeeded by his brother, Opechancanough, a bold and cunning chief, extremely hostile to the English. A plan was formed for the total destruction of the planters. Unsuspicious of danger, they had neglected all precautions; had laid aside their military exercises, and

1622 were on the most familiar terms with the Indians.

On the 22d of May, 1622, Opechancanough and his warriors, fell, at once, on every settlement, and murdered, without distinction of age or sex. The massacre would have been complete, had not the conspiracy, the night before it was carried into execution, been betrayed by one of the Indians, in season to save Jamestown, and a few of the neighboring settlements. To this massacre, a bloody Indian war succeeded. The settlements were reduced from eighty to eight, and famine was added to their other distresses. Succors from England saved them from total destruction. After a severe struggle, the Indians were subdued; many tribes were exterminated, and the rest were driven from the neighborhood of the rivers, so that the settlements extended themselves in safety.\*

\* The Virginian Indians were divided into more than forty tribes, and these tribes were combined into three principal confederacies. The *Powhatan* confederacy consisted of thirty tribes, and inhabited the country between Chesapeake Bay and the falls of the rivers. Powhatan and his brother Opechancanough were the head sachems of this confederacy. It was with the Powhatan Indians that the war mentioned above was carried on; it terminated in their almost entire destruction. The other two confederacies were the *Mannahoacs*, consisting of eight tribes, who inhabited the upper courses of the Rappahannoc and Potomac; and the *Monacans*, who numbered five tribes, and dwelt on the upper part of James River. These two confederacies had fewer tribes than the Powhatans, with whom they waged a ceaseless war, but seem to have equalled them in numbers and power.

In 1624, the London Company was dissolved; and the king having assumed the government of the colony into his own hands, appointed a governor and eleven councillors, in whom all authority was vested.

Two successive governors, Wyat and Harvey, exercised this extensive authority in such an arbitrary and tyrannical manner, as entirely to disgust the colonists. On one occasion, in a fit of passion, they seized Harvey and sent him a prisoner to England. At length, Sir William Berkeley was appointed governor. He restored the provincial assembly; and by the mildness of his temper, the gentleness of his manners, and the judicious plan on which he administered the government, gained a universal popularity. Under his rule, the Virginians enjoyed many years of peace and prosperity.

In the English civil wars, the colony of Virginia took part with the king; but was obliged to submit to a force, which the parliament sent against it. Sir William Berkeley who had made all the resistance he was able, and by so doing, had obtained very favorable terms for the colony, retired to private life, and Virginia remained nearly nine years in almost perfect tranquillity, under governors appointed by the colonial assembly. The names of these governors were Bennet, Diggs and Mathews. During that period, the colony enjoyed an unrestrained trade, and its population was increased by the arrival of many persons attached to the royal party, many of them gentlemen of good families, who left England, in order to avoid the dangers they were exposed to there, or in hopes to repair their shattered fortunes. On the death of Mathews, Sir William Berkeley, the old and favorite governor, was prevailed on by the assembly to resume his office; and the restoration happening the next year, Charles II. confirmed his authority. At the restoration, Virginia contained a population of 30,000 people.

One of the causes, which, during the government of Harvey, had disquieted Virginia, was the grant of MARYLAND, \* to Lord Baltimore. Few as was the number

\* So named from Henrietta Maria, then Queen of England.

of the Virginians, and small as was the extent of their settlements, they could not bear to have the original limit of their colony contracted. But, Charles I., the reigning king, paid little attention to the wishes of his subjects whether at home or abroad. The grant

of Maryland was made in 1632; and two  
1634 years after, a colony of two hundred gentlemen, with their attendants, chiefly Roman Catholics, under George Calvert, brother of Lord Baltimore,

landed near the mouth of the Potomac. They entered into a treaty with the natives, purchased of them a tract of territory, and built a town, to which they gave the name of *St Mary's*. The growth of this colony, unlike that of Virginia, was steady and rapid. The government was judiciously administered, and complete toleration was allowed in matters of religion. An Indian war, in which the colony was engaged, terminated in the entire submission of the natives.

The intrigues of a certain Wm. Clayborne, who had established a small settlement on the isle of Kent, in the Chesapeake, and who was unwilling to submit to the authority of Lord Baltimore, bred some disturbances; and the proprietor of Maryland, having sided with the king during the civil wars, he was deprived, by the victorious parliament,

1652 of the government of the colony. The colonists held the same opinions with Lord Baltimore, and the parliamentary government was not submitted to without great reluctance. An insurrection

1658 was raised by one Josiah Fendal, who had been appointed governor by the proprietor; and for two or three years, the affairs of Maryland remained in a state of great confusion; but at the restoration, things reverted to their former state. The province was restored to Lord

Baltimore, and he appointed Philip Calvert to be  
1660 its governor. At this time, the province of Maryland contained 12,000 inhabitants.

---

## CHAPTER III.

Plymouth Company. — The Puritans. — Plymouth Colony. — Other Attempts to Colonize New England. — Colony of Massachusetts Bay. — Boston founded. — First Settlements in Connecticut. — Providence founded. — Pequod War. — Internal Disputes. — Mrs Hutchinson. — Settlement of Rhode Island. — New Hampshire. — Colony of New Haven. — Harvard College founded. — Emigration from England ceases. — Union of the New England Colonies. — Province of Maine. — Indians of New England. — Praying Indians. — Persecution of the Quakers. — State of the English Colonies at the Restoration.

HAVING, in the preceding chapter, related the origin, and traced the progress of the two oldest southern colonies, let us now take a brief view of those which were planted farther north.

The Plymouth Company was far inferior to that of London in wealth and enterprise; and all its attempts at colonization were feeble and unfortunate. The first vessel, fitted out by the company, was taken by the Spaniards.

1607      Soon after, they succeeded in establishing a small colony at *Sagadahoc*, on the coast of Maine, near the mouth of the river Kennebec. But the settlers suffered so much the first winter, from cold and hunger, that when vessels arrived in the spring, bringing supplies of men and provisions, they all embarked, and returned to England.

Nothing further was attempted by the company for several years, except a few fishing voyages to Cape Cod, and a petty traffic with the natives for oil and skins. In

1614      1614, Captain Smith, who has been so often mentioned in the history of Virginia, was sent on one of these voyages. He explored the coast from Penobscot River, as far south as Cape Cod. On his return, he drew a map of his discoveries, which he presented to Prince Charles, the same person who was afterwards king of England, under the title of Charles I. This young Prince, delighted with Smith's glowing descriptions, bestowed on the country the name of NEW ENGLAND, — a name it has ever since retained.

In 1620, a new charter was granted to the Plymouth company, by which it received the name of 'The

1620 Council established at Plymouth, in the county of Devon, for the planting, ruling, ordering, and governing of New England, in America.' But the first permanent settlements within the limits of their charter, grew out of causes over which the company had no control.

Though the church of England had renounced the errors of popery, it still retained a large number of rights and ceremonies, borrowed from the service of the Catholic church. These ceremonies were regarded with great dislike by many learned and pious men. They looked upon them as dangerous remnants of the popish creed ; and if their scruples were unreasonable, at least, they were sincere. The number of those, who entertained these opinions gradually increased, till at length, they came to form a party in the state. They received the name of *Puritans*, as if in derision of that peculiar *purity* of doctrines and manners, by which they sought to be distinguished. Though the puritans disliked the church service, it was with great reluctance that they separated from the church ; but, at last, they were driven to it by the folly of those, to whom the church government was entrusted. Instead of yielding to the scruples of the puritans, and permitting them to dispense with the more odious part of the service, the bishops enforced the most trifling ceremonies, with the greatest strictness, and added new rites still more odious ; punishing with fine and imprisonment all who refused obedience to their decrees. The obstinacy of the puritans increased, just in proportion to the severity of the bishops ; till at length, many of them began to form plans for leaving a country, where liberty of conscience was no longer to be enjoyed.

A congregation, under the care of Mr Robinson, which belonged to a sect, called the *Brownists*,\* was the first to emigrate. They settled in Holland, the year in 1609. They were well received, and were permitted to enjoy their peculiar opinions unmolested. But they did not like the loose morals, and free manners of the Dutch ; their children left them and entered the Dutch army and navy ; and their church was in danger of soon becoming extinct. After

\* The Brownists were a sect, who carried the doctrines of the puritans to a greater extreme, than the rest of their brethren. They were the first to separate entirely from the English church.

eleven or twelve years' residence in Holland, they determined to remove to America. A grant of territory was obtained from the London company; some London merchants, who took a share in the enterprise, advanced a sum of money; and in 1620, a part of the congregation passed over to England, whence, on the 5th of August, they set sail in the ships *Speedwell* and *May Flower*, on their voyage to America. The leakiness of the *Speedwell* obliged them twice, to return; and at last, they were compelled to leave her behind. The *May Flower* recommenced her voyage, and after a boisterous passage, she made the land of Cape Cod, November the 9th, and three days after, came to anchor in Cape Cod harbor. The colonists had intended to settle near the mouth of Hudson river; but the master of the ship, bribed, it is said, by the Dutch, who had settlements in that neighborhood, had purposely carried them farther north.

Finding themselves beyond the limits of the company, from whom they had obtained their charter, they judged it expedient, before landing, to enter into an agreement, which might serve as a foundation of their social polity. Accordingly, after solemn prayer and thanksgiving, they signed a paper, by which they combined themselves into a body politic, and mutually promised to submit to all such just and equal laws and ordinances, as should, from time to time, be thought meet and convenient for the general good. Mr Carver was chosen the first governor. Including men, women and children, the whole colony consisted of 101 souls.

Five weeks were spent in exploring the country; and after much labor and fatigue, having discovered Plymouth harbor, they determined to settle there. Accordingly, the ship sailed thither, and the people having landed, were soon busy in felling trees, and erecting houses. For greater security, they built their houses in two rows, and as they  
1621 were in some fear of the Indians, they established the needful military orders, and chose Miles Standish to be their commander. The town was named *New Plymouth*; the colony was known as the *Plymouth Colony*, and the settlers themselves are often distinguished by the name of the *Pilgrims*.

On the 16th of March, an Indian came boldly into the street of Plymouth, alone and unarmed, and surprised the



inhabitants by calling out, 'Welcome, Englishmen! Welcome, Englishmen!' They had seen Indians before in the woods, but this was the first, with whom they had any intercourse. His name was Samoset; he was a Sagamore, or petty chief, of a neighboring tribe, and had learned a little English of the fishermen, who frequented the coast. By his assistance, the colony became acquainted with Massasoit, the great chief of the Pocanokets or Wampanoags, a powerful tribe or confederacy, which inhabited the country extending westwardly from the neighborhood of Plymouth, towards the shores of Narraganset bay. Mutual distrust, prevented, for a while, any advances on either side. But an interview at length took place between governor Carver and Massasoit; presents were exchanged, and a league of friendship formed, which was faithfully observed by both parties, for more than fifty years.

An intercourse with the fishing and trading vessels, that frequented their coast, had introduced the small pox among the Indians, who dwelt along the shores of Massachusetts bay. The distemper proved very fatal; and many tribes, especially those belonging to the Massachusetts confederacy, were almost destroyed by it. The country along the sea coast was thus left vacant, and the power and numbers of those tribes, which would have felt the most immediate interest in preventing the settlement of the country, was greatly diminished. Some of Massasoit's dependent sachems opposed his alliance with the English; but Miles Standish, at the head of *fourteen* men, marched into their country, and by his activity and vigor, inspired such terror, that nine petty chiefs came to Plymouth to make their peace with the colony; and their example was soon after followed by several others.

The winter was so severe, and the colonists were so ill provided against it, that within the first three months after landing, they lost more than half their number; among the rest, Mr Carver, their governor. Mr Bradford was chosen to supply his place. The November following, a ship arrived from England bringing a seasonable supply of thirty-five new colonists. A new charter for the colony, granted by the council of Plymouth, came out in the same vessel.

Notwithstanding the friendship of Massasoit, some other of the Indians, especially the Narragansets, a numer-

1622      ous and powerful tribe, were ill disposed towards the settlers. It was therefore judged expedient, to fortify the town, by surrounding it with a fence of timbers driven into the earth. This fortification had four gates, which were guarded by day and locked by night. Soon after, a small fort was built, on which cannon were mounted, and a regular guard kept.

The Massachusetts Indians, having formed a new combination against the colony, Miles Standish was sent upon an expedition against them. He killed several; dispersed the rest; and succeeded in disconcerting all their plans. Several ships arrived, this year, laden with goods and passengers.

Plymouth had now been settled four years; it contained thirtytwo dwelling-houses, and 180 people.

1624      At first, the settlers held their land, and all their other property, in common. But learning by experience, the ill effects of this system, they now made a distribution of goods, and allotted a portion of land to each settler. In 1627, they purchased of the London merchants, who had assisted them with money and goods, their share in the colony. The price was £1800, to be paid in annual instalments of £200 each. On this occasion a further distribution of the common property took place. They built a trading house on the south shore of Cape Cod, and another at the mouth of the river Kennebec; and carried on a considerable trade with the Eastern Indians, and with the Dutch, who were established at the mouth of the Hudson. Several years after, they established trading houses on Connecticut river; and the first house built within the state of Connecticut, was erected, in 1633, by a trading company from Plymouth.

The settlers of Plymouth were on many accounts, remarkable men. They persevered, despite of dangers and suffering, in their purpose of planting a church and a commonwealth, in the wilderness; and might justly say of themselves, as they did, in their petition to the council of Plymouth, for a patent of the territory they had colonized, 'that it was not with them, as with other men, whom small things could discourage, or small discontents cause to

wish themselves at home again.' Their colony increased but slowly, for they were more desirous of preserving the purity of their church, than of increasing the numbers of their people. Besides, the soil of their territory was barren, and in this respect, much inferior to that of the neighboring colonies.

Soon after the settlement of Plymouth, several other attempts were made to colonize the shores of New England. Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and captain John Mason, obtained several grants of territory from the council of Plymouth, and made some attempts to establish a colony near the mouth of Piscataqua river. In 1622, a plantation was begun at *Wissagusset*, since called Weymouth,\* by Mr Weston, a London merchant. In 1624, Mr White, a nonconforming minister of Dorchester in England, persuaded a number of merchants and others, to attempt the establishment of a colony in America, and a settlement, at their expense, was begun at *Cape Ann*. In 1625, Captain Wolleston, with a few followers, began a plantation at *Mount Wolleston*.† But these, and other similar settlements, undertaken by various individuals and associations, were principally for purposes of trade and the fishery, and were of little consequence, compared with the colony of MASSACHUSETTS BAY, which soon after began to be planted.

The persecution of the English puritans still continued. Archbishop Laud, a narrow minded and bigoted man, was now at the head of the English church. He prosecuted with unrelenting severity, every symptom of disrespect for the prescribed ceremonies; and made it impossible for those, who were inclined to the puritanical doctrines, to remain at home with comfort or safety. Accordingly, a large number of persons, many of them men of education and property, began to think of seeking in America, a refuge from the intolerance which prevailed at home. In

1628, the council of Plymouth sold to Sir Henry Roswell and five associates, a large tract of country, bounded on the north and south, by the rivers Merrimack and Charles, and stretching to an indefinite extent westwardly. Through the influence of Mr White, the

\* Weymouth is ten miles south from Boston.

† Mount Wolleston is in Quincy, eight miles southeast from Boston.

nonconforming minister of Dorchester, Roswell and his associates, united with Sir Richard Saltonstall, and several gentlemen of London, and the same year, Mr John Endicott was sent, with a number of people, to prepare the way for the settlement of a colony. He landed at *Naumkeag*, and there laid the foundation of the second permanent town in New England. He called the town *Salem*, in allusion to that *peaceful* enjoyment of their peculiar opinions, of which the colonists were in pursuit.

The king's charter was obtained, confirming the Massachusetts grant, and under this charter, the patentees formed themselves into a company, and chose a governor, deputy governor, and eighteen assistants. In the course of the summer, six ships, with three hundred colonists, sailed for New England. Half the new comers remained at Salem; the other half removed to a peninsula near the mouth of Charles river, called *Mishawum*, which had been visited and examined the year before by a party from Salem. Here they laid the foundation of a town, which, in honor of the king of England, they named *Charlestown*. In the meantime a plan was formed in England, for transferring the government of the company to Massachusetts; and the next year, seventeen ships sailed for New England, having on board more than 1500 people.

In these ships came governor Winthrop, deputy governor Dudley, several of the newly chosen assistants, and other gentlemen of wealth and distinction, who brought over with them, the charter of the colony. The greater part of these emigrants landed at Charlestown, but a number of them soon moved across the river to a Peninsula, called by the Indians *Shawmut*, and by the English *Trimountain*,—but afterwards named *Boston*.\* Others formed distinct settlements in such parts of the neighboring country, as they found inviting and convenient. *Dorchester*, *Watertown*, *Roxbury*, *Medford*, and *Cambridge*, all in the immediate vicinity of Boston, were among the towns earliest settled. The first court of assistants, after the government of the colony was transferred to America, was held at

\* From Boston, in England, whence came Mr Cotton, one of the principal ministers of the colony.

Charlestown on the 23d of August, and the second, at the same place, on the 7th of September. But Boston soon became the chief town of the colony, and the first General Court of Massachusetts, was holden there, on the 19th of October. The settlers endured great hardships from want of proper food and shelter, and great numbers not able to bear this new mode of life, died the first winter.

The rigorous persecution of the puritans still continued. For several years following, large numbers of people came annually from England, and the settlements were rapidly extended. The general character of the Massachusetts colonists, their manners and religious opinions, were similar to those of the settlers at Plymouth; but they were far superior in education, wealth, and the means of planting a colony.

By the Massachusetts charter, all the freemen of the colony, were to assemble four times a year, for the election of governor and other officers, and for the enactment of laws.

As the settlements extended, the inconvenience  
 1634 of this system was felt; and in 1634, it was agreed by general consent, that while the freemen retained the right of electing the magistrates, and assembled once a year for that purpose, the power of making laws should be transferred to a representative body, to be composed of delegates from the several plantations. These deputies, together with the governor and the eighteen assistants, composed the General Court for the enactment of laws; while the governor and assistants, without the deputies, composed the Court of Assistants, the principal judicial tribunal, in the colony.

In 1635 the council of Plymouth surrendered their  
 1635 charter to the king; but they had already granted away to other persons, a large part of the territory embraced within its limits.

The inhabitants of Massachusetts Bay were now so numerous, that the new comers found it difficult to pitch upon convenient places for settlement. Several persons had already travelled a hundred miles or more into the interior, and discovered the river *Connecticut*. They represented the country on its banks to be so extremely inviting, that a number of the Massachusetts settlers determined to remove thither. The first party, consisting of sixty, — men, women

and children,— began their journey in the month of October. They travelled through the woods on foot, with no other guide than the compass, driving their horses and cattle before them. After a dangerous and fatiguing journey of fourteen days, they arrived on the banks of the Connecticut, and founded the towns of *Windsor* and *Weathersfield*. The next year, another company under Mr Hooker, a celebrated minister, travelled through the wilderness, and founded the town of *Hartford*. This was the origin of the colony of CONNECTICUT. The government of this new colony was organized under a commission from Massachusetts; but within two or three years the settlers, finding themselves beyond the limits of the Massachusetts charter, established a separate government. The first assembly of Connecticut met at Hartford, in 1639, on which occasion, they enacted a body of laws, and chose Mr John Haynes to be their first governor.

The territory of Connecticut had been granted, in 1631, by the council of Plymouth, to Lord Say, Lord Brook, and several others. They did nothing toward settling a colony till 1635, when they sent a number of men from England, and caused Fort Saybrook to be built at the mouth of Connecticut river. The settlers from Massachusetts were within the limit of this patent; but as the persons to whom it belonged were themselves puritans, and well disposed towards the people of that colony, the emigrants from Massachusetts were not disturbed in their new settlements. The Dutch, who were settled at the mouth of the Hudson, claimed the country along the Connecticut, and had exerted themselves to prevent the English from settling on the banks of that river. As early as 1633, they had built a fort, called Fort Hope, near the present situation of Hartford, and they were about taking possession of the entrance of the river, when they were prevented by the erection of Fort Saybrook. The Dutch maintained themselves at Fort Hope till 1642, when the garrison were taken prisoners, and the fort seized by the people of Connecticut in retaliation for certain hostilities, which the Dutch had committed upon their settlements on Long Island. In 1644, the people of Connecticut purchased in the right of Lord Say, and the other English proprietors of their territory, and thus acquired an undisputed title.

In 1636, the town and colony of PROVIDENCE were founded by Roger Williams, formerly minister of Salem.

1636 Roger Williams had settled first at Plymouth, where he was for some time very much esteemed; but having advanced some singular opinions, he became unpopular, and removed to Salem. He had not been long there, before he again brought forward his peculiar notions. Among other things, he persuaded Mr Endicott, who was one of the magistrates and a member of his church, to cut the cross out of the king's colors, as being a badge that savored too much of popery. But his greatest offence was, his denying any church in the colony to be pure, and a true church, except the one at Salem, over which he himself presided. By these and similar indiscretions, he gained the ill will of the leading ministers and magistrates of the colony. Endeavors were used to reclaim him; but not being willing to renounce his peculiarities, at length he was banished. He obtained a grant of land from Canonicus, chief sachem of the Narragansets, at a place called *Mooshausick*, and, with a few companions, began a settlement, which he named *Providence*, in acknowledgment, as he declared, 'of God's merciful providence towards him in his distress.'

Notwithstanding some absurdities of which he was guilty, many parts of Roger Williams' conduct merit approbation. He established a perfect toleration in his own colony, and instead of showing any resentment against those by whom he had been banished, he was employed for forty years in continued acts of kindness towards them; giving them timely notice of the designs of the Indians, and of the movements of the Dutch, and their other enemies.

The Pequods, a large and warlike tribe of Indians, who were settled along the banks of the river, now called the Thames, having from time to time committed acts of hostility, and plundered and murdered a number of the colonists, it was judged expedient to take some measures for punishing these aggressions, and to prevent them for the future. Accordingly, Mr Endicott, with 80 or 90 men, marched into the country of the Pequods; but owing to the lateness of the season, he was obliged to return without effecting anything.

Next to the Pequods, the Narragansets were the most

powerful of the New England Indians. They inhabited the country along the western shore of the Narraganset bay, and could muster 5000 fighting men. There had been, for ages, a fixed and deadly enmity between these two tribes. But the Pequods, dreading the power of the colonists, whom they justly regarded as the common enemy of all the Indians, were willing to make peace with the Narragansets, and desirous to obtain their assistance in carrying on the war. The colonists were extremely anxious to prevent this alliance. They sent a solemn embassy to the Narragansets; invited Miantinomoh, son of Canonicus, who ruled the tribe conjointly with his father, to visit Boston; and at length persuaded him to make a treaty with the colony, and to join them in the war against the Pequods. They also obtained the alliance of Uncas, sachem of the Moheagans, a tribe situated north of the Pequods, on the upper branches of the Thames, and extending westerly to the banks of the Connecticut.

The Pequods were rather emboldened than terrified by Endicott's ineffectual expedition; and early the  
1637 next spring, they renewed their aggressions. It was now necessary to prosecute the war with vigor. Connecticut was nearest the scene of action, and her troops were first in the field. Ninety men, under captain John Mason, who had been bred a soldier in Europe, and sixty Moheagan Indians, under their sachem, Uncas, assembled at Hartford, and sailed down Connecticut river. They landed at fort Saybrook, and having taken on board a reinforcement of twenty men, sailed for Narraganset bay. Here they were joined by about 400 Narraganset Indians, and commenced their march into the Pequod country.

The Pequod warriors were principally collected in two large forts. One of these forts was on Mystic river, a small stream, which runs into the sea, about half way between Narraganset bay and the river Thames; and it was thither that Mason directed his march. On the 26th of May, early in the morning, he arrived at the hill, on which the fort stood. He divided his men into two parties; and they instantly rushed to the assault. The Indians, deceived by a report that their enemies had returned home, had been feasting and dancing all night, and were now in a deep



sleep. They would have been completely surprised had not an alarm been given by the barking of a dog. This roused the warriors; but the colonists pressed on, and pouring a fire of musquetry through the palisades, they forced their way into the fort. A severe contest followed; many of the Indians were slain; some of the assailants were killed, and others wounded. The issue of the battle was still doubtful, when Mason, crying out, 'We must burn them,' caught up a firebrand, and thrust it among the mats with which the wigwams were covered. The fort was instantly in flames. The colonists and their Indian allies retiring out of it, formed a circle around, and struck down every Pequod who attempted to escape. The Indians fought desperately, but their bows and clubs were of little avail against the fire-arms of the colonists. Sixty wigwams were burnt, and between five and six hundred of the Pequods perished in the conflict. Two of the colonists were killed, and sixteen wounded.

The victory was complete, yet the victorious forces were in distress. The men were greatly fatigued by a long march, want of sleep and the sharpness of the action. The morning was hot; water was difficult to be obtained; and a fresh body of Pequods was rapidly approaching. Mason attacked this new enemy, with a chosen band, and gave his men time to march on towards Pequod harbor,\* where the vessels had been ordered to await their arrival. As the English retreated, the Indians advanced to the hill, on which the fort had stood. At the sight of their ruined habitations and slaughtered countrymen, they burst out into a transport of rage; stamped on the ground; tore their hair, and regardless of danger, rushed down the hill in pursuit of the English. But Mason succeeded in making good his retreat. He embarked his troops at Pequod harbor, and landed at Hartford, where he was received with every expression of joy and gratitude.

Sassacus, chief of the Pequods, assembled his remaining warriors. But upon consultation, they concluded, that after the severe losses they had met with, it would no longer be possible to defend their country against the attacks of the white men. Accordingly, they destroyed their forts and wigwams, and dispersed in various directions. Sassacus, with a number of his principal warriors, fled towards the Hudson river.

\* Now New London.

The Massachusetts forces, under Captain Stoughton, arrived at Pequod harbor in June. Here they were joined by a large body of the Narragansets, and having penetrated into the Pequod country, they discovered a party of the enemy concealed in a swamp. They surrounded the swamp, killed the men to the number of thirty, and took eighty women and children, prisoners.

The vessels sailed along the shore, and the troops, marching by land, pursued the flying Indians as far as Quinni-piack.\* Here they were informed, that the main body of the Pequods was assembled in a swamp, at a considerable distance eastward. The colonists marched with all expe-

dition, and having reached the swamp,† they sur-  
July 13 rounded it, and immediately commenced an attack. After the action had continued for some time, they offered life to all who would surrender. Upon this proposal, about two hundred of the Indians came out of the swamp, and surrendered themselves prisoners. But the warriors, to the number of one hundred, refused all terms, and renewed the action, which was kept up the greater part of the night. The next morning a thick fog favored their escape. About seventy broke through the English lines; the rest fell in the action. Sassacus, with a few of his warriors, fled to the Mohawks, who were persuaded by the Narragansets to put him to death. The Pequod prisoners, were divided between the Narragansets and Moheagans; their country was claimed and gradually settled by the English.

Such was the event of the first Indian war in which New England was engaged; and thus perished the tribe of the Pequods. The war was just and necessary, and the colonists carried it on with commendable vigor. Yet who can help regretting the extermination of a brave and ancient people, who died in defending the country God had given them.

While engaged in the war with the Pequods, the colony of Massachusetts bay suffered severely from internal commotions. Some time previous, Mrs Hutchinson, a woman of considerable talent, though but little discretion, had begun to hold meetings in Boston, at which she instructed the

\* Now New Haven.

† Near where Fairfield now stands.

sisters of the churches in the most recondite doctrines of theology. This proceeding was approved and encouraged by Mr Wheelwright, brother-in-law to Mrs Hutchinson, a minister of good character for piety and learning; by Mr Cotton, minister of Boston, and a leading man in the colony; and by Mr Vane, the governor, a young man of great abilities but wholly carried away with religious whimseys. Encouraged by such respectable support, and prompted, perhaps, by a natural vanity, Mrs Hutchinson advanced opinions which involved the whole colony in disputes and contentions. She distinguished the ministers and members of churches, a few of them — her own particular friends and followers — as under a covenant of grace; the rest, as under a covenant of works. This invidious distinction had its natural effect. The whole colony was soon divided into two parties, which regarded each other with the utmost suspicion and dislike. The fear of God and the love of their neighbor, seemed to be overlooked as things of little consequence. The questions which distracted every mind were such as these: whether faith is a cause of justification; whether a man is justified before he believes; whether anything of sanctification can help to evidence to believers their justification; and other inquiries of a like import.

At the court of elections for 1637, the parties had an opportunity of trying their strength. The friends of Mrs Hutchinson voted for Vane; those opposed to her supported Winthrop. There was great danger of a violent tumult that day. The speeches on both sides were fierce, and the assembled voters more than once began to lay hands on each other. But in the end, the friends of Winthrop prevailed, and he was declared governor.

Vane soon after left the country, and returned to England, where he took an active part in the civil wars, and made himself very conspicuous.\* Notwithstanding the defeat of her party, Mrs Hutchinson still continued her lectures; till at last it was judged necessary to call a general assembly of the churches, for the purpose of taking her opinions into consideration.

This synod, the first that met in America, assembled at

\*He is known in English history as Sir Henry Vane. At the restoration he was tried and executed for high treason.

Cambridge, and after a session of three weeks, condemned *eightytwo* erroneous opinions, held and disseminated by Mrs Hutchinson and her followers. The synod did nothing but define the offence. They left it to the civil magistrate to judge and punish. Wheelwright was tried, found guilty of heresy, and banished. Mrs Hutchinson soon after shared the same fate. To prevent tumults, the court required sixty inhabitants of Boston, the most devoted of Mrs Hutchinson's followers, to deliver up their arms; and at the same time passed a law, punishing with fine and imprisonment, any who should defame the court, or its proceedings.

Whatever judgment we may form of this celebrated controversy, or of the conduct of the several parties concerned in it, at all events, it tended to promote the settlement of New England.

A number of Mrs Hutchinson's followers, who found it impossible to live comfortably in Massachusetts, by  
 1638 the advice and assistance of Roger Williams, purchased of the Indians the island of *Aquetneck*. These adventurers, fifteen in number, formed themselves into a body politic, and chose William Codrington to be their judge, or chief magistrate. A fertile soil and a pleasant climate attracted many settlers, and the island soon became populous. They called it the Isle of Rhodes, but use soon changed the name to that of RHODE ISLAND. In 1644, the colonies of Rhode Island and Providence plantations, were united under a patent, which Roger Williams obtained for them in England.

Wheelwright collected a number of followers, and having obtained a grant of land from the Indians, founded the town of *Exeter*. This town was within the limits of a grant made in 1629, by the Council of Plymouth to captain John Mason. In this grant, the territory received the name of NEW HAMPSHIRE. Two other towns within the limits of Mason's grant, — *Portsmouth* and *Dover*, both on the Piscataqua, — had been settled as early as 1623; but they had been principally used as fishing stations, and were still very inconsiderable. These three towns had for some time, each a distinct and independent government. But having fallen into great disorders, and finding themselves unable to maintain the authority of the laws, in 1641, they petitioned Massachusetts to receive them under her jurisdiction. Massa-

chusetts claimed the territory of New Hampshire, as within the limits of her charter, and granted with pleasure the petitions of these towns. They were received as a part of the colony, and were soon after erected into a separate county, called the county of Norfolk.

In the year 1637, Mr Davenport a celebrated minister, with several merchants and others from London, arrived at Boston. Like the other New England colonists, they left their homes in pursuit of civil and religious liberty. They were importuned to settle in Massachusetts, but preferred establishing a distinct colony of their own. Early the next spring, they sailed for *Quinnipiack*. On the 19th of April, they kept their first Sabbath in that place, under a spreading oak. Having purchased of the Indians *Quinnipiack* and the surrounding country, they laid the foundations of the town and colony of NEW HAVEN. Theophilus Eaton was their first governor. New Haven continued a separate colony till 1665, when it was united with Connecticut under one and the same charter.

In 1638, Harvard College was founded. The next year, the first printing press in America was set up at Cambridge, the town where the college was established. The first thing printed, was the freeman's oath; the next, an almanac; the third, a new version of the psalms.

Charles I. had long governed England in the most arbitrary manner; but at length the necessity of his  
 1640 affairs compelled him to call a parliament. The parliament, in which were many puritans, had no sooner assembled, than they entered on the redress of grievances, and in a year or two, assumed the whole power of the kingdom into their own hands. On this change of affairs, the emigration to New England ceased, and several of the most considerable colonists returned to their native country. It is supposed that the whole number who emigrated from England did not much exceed 20,000. There had been already planted fifty towns and villages. Thirty or forty churches had been erected; forts and trading houses had been established; and ships had been built of from 100 to 400 tons burden. The sudden stop now put to emigration, was a severe blow to the colonies, and caused a great decline in the value of all sorts of property. However, the colonists derived some benefit from the prevalence

of their own principles at home. They were regarded with great favor by the Long Parliament, and afterwards by Cromwell; and several ordinances were made for their benefit, particularly one, by which the trade between England and the colonies was freed from all duties and imposts whatever.

The distance of New England from the parent country, and the beginning of civil dissensions there; the  
 1643 hostile disposition of the Indians, and the neighborhood of French and Dutch settlements, induced the colonies of Massachusetts bay, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven, to form a confederacy for mutual advice, assistance and defence. They assumed the title of THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND, and established certain articles as the foundation and law of the alliance. Commissioners from these four colonies met, twice a year, alternately at Boston, Hartford, New Haven and Plymouth, to transact the business of the confederacy. This union lasted more than forty years, and was, in many respects, of great utility. Rhode Island was desirous of joining the alliance, but Massachusetts never would consent to it.

In 1634, Sir Ferdinando Gorges had obtained a royal charter, confirming to him the province of MAINE, of which he had received several previous grants from the council of Plymouth. There were, at this time some feeble settlements along the coast, at *York, Wells, Saco* and some other places; and Gorges made great exertions to plant others;

but his efforts were for the most, extremely un-  
 1651 successful. At length, the colony seems to have been deserted by the proprietor; the towns were in confusion, and the authority of the government at an end. Massachusetts claimed the province of Maine, as being within the bounds of her charter; and taking advantage of the present confusion, encouraged the disposition which prevailed among the principal inhabitants to submit to her jurisdiction. The towns of Maine were  
 1652 soon persuaded to come into this arrangement, and were erected into a separate county by the name of *Yorkshire*.

We have already had occasion to mention the principal tribes of Indians, that dwelt within the bounds of New

England. They were the Pokanokets or Wampanoags, the Narragansets, the Pequods, and the Moheagans. The tribe of the Pequods was wholly destroyed in the Pequod war. Besides these larger tribes, there were a great number of smaller ones, seated along the sea-shore, or inhabiting the banks of the rivers. The Indians along the Connecticut were quite numerous, and were known among the colonists by the name of river Indians. There were also, several considerable tribes dwelling on the Merrimack, the Piscataqua, and their principal branches. The Indians of Maine, like those in every other part of the country, were divided into a great number of tribes; these tribes were named from the rivers, near which they dwelt, but were known to the colonists by the general name of Tarrenteens.

The New England Indians were, perhaps, as little advanced in civilization as any people to be found on the continent. They were certainly very inferior to many of the tribes towards the west and south. Yet ignorant and degraded as they were, great exertions were made to introduce civilization and christianity among them. In 1646, the general court of Massachusetts passed an act to encourage the carrying the gospel among the Indians; and in 1650, a society designed to promote the same object, was incorporated by the English parliament. John Elliot, minister of Roxbury, engaged in the cause with so much zeal as to earn the title of the *Indian Apostle*. He translated the bible into the Indian tongue,\* and spent many years in missionary labors. It was a maxim with him, that civilization and christianity must go together. He exerted himself to assemble the Indian converts into towns; he instructed them in husbandry and the necessary trades, and excited them to industry and a prudent management of their affairs. Mr Mayhew labored zealously in the same cause. Their success was not equal to their wishes. Yet it was by no means inconsiderable. The Narragansets and Wampanoags would not listen to their preaching, but they were well received among many of the smaller tribes, and made numerous converts. By the year 1660, there were in New England, ten towns of praying Indians, (for this was

\* This Indian translation was the first edition of the bible published in America.

the name given to the converts,) and six regular Indian churches.

Contemporary with the attempts to convert and civilize the Indians, was the persecution of the Quakers. This sect made its first appearance in England, in 1652. It soon spread to America, and as early as 1654, a law was passed in Massachusetts, forbidding any one to have in his possession any Quaker books, and commanding all who had any such books, to send them in to the next magistrate. The Quakers, though now the most quiet and discreet of sects, were, at their first appearance, high fanatics; and in the fervor of their zeal, were guilty of many violations of decorum, and some breaches of morality. It is to be feared, however, that the persecuting laws passed against them, were aimed, rather at their heresy, than their indecorums; for to punish these, the existing laws were already, amply sufficient. No person in the colony openly professed Quaker principles, till 1656; when two women of this persuasion, whose names, 'after the flesh,'\* were Mary Fisher and Ann Austin, came from Barbadoes to Massachusetts. Nine others, men and women, arrived soon after, from London. They were carried before the magistrates, where they behaved with great rudeness, and sentence of banishment was passed against them all. As yet, there were no special provisions for the punishment of Quakers, and this sentence was founded upon a law of the colony against heretics in general. But, at the next session of the general court, a law was passed, imposing a penalty of one hundred pounds, on any master of a vessel, who should bring a known Quaker into the colony. The Quaker himself was to be sent to the house of correction, whipped twenty stripes, and kept at hard labor until transported. The next year, by an additional law, all persons were subject to a penalty of forty shillings, for every hour's entertainment, given to a known Quaker, and any Quaker, after the first conviction, if a man, was to lose one of his ears, and after the second conviction, the other; if a woman, was to be, each time, severely whipped; and both men and women, on the third conviction, were to have their tongues bored through, with a red hot iron. Not-

\* So they expressed themselves, when examined by the magistrates.



withstanding the severity of these provisions, the numbers of the sect continued to increase, and at length, a  
1658 law was passed for punishing with *death*, all Quakers, who should return into the jurisdiction, after banishment. This law was very vigorously opposed, and was finally carried by a small majority. These laws continued in force for three years; many Quakers were whipped, fined, imprisoned and banished; and several, who having been banished, were bold and infatuated enough to return, suffered death. A letter from Charles II. written soon after his restoration to the throne, put an end to this severity.

Persecution for religious opinions was not confined to New England. Severe laws were enacted in Virginia against Quakers and other dissenters, and these laws were rigidly enforced. Maryland and Rhode Island, where liberty of conscience was unrestrained, were filled with people, who had been driven from Virginia and the united colonies on account of their religious opinions.

At the restoration of Charles II. to the English throne, more than fifty years had elapsed since the per-  
1660 manent establishment of English emigrants in America. But the progress of the colonies had been retarded by a thousand difficulties and dangers, and their increase had been very slow. They were now seven in number;\* but the settlements in Maryland and Virginia were confined in a great measure to the neighborhood of the Chesapeake; and the towns of New England were distributed along the sea coast, or scattered up and down Connecticut river. But far the greater part, both of New England and the two southern provinces still remained a wilderness, and the whole population of the English colonies did not exceed 80,000.

---

\* Virginia, Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, Maryland, Rhode Island and New Haven.

## CHAPTER IV.

Restoration of Charles II. — The Navigation Act. — Origin and History of the Province of the New Netherlands. — Swedish Settlements on the Delaware. — Conquest of the New Netherlands. — Province of New York; Province of New Jersey. — Grant and Settlement of Carolina. — Affairs of Virginia. — Bacon's Rebellion.

THE restoration of Charles II. to the English throne, was regarded in the different colonies with very different emotions. In Virginia and Maryland, where the party of the royalists was numerous, the intelligence was received with transport. In Massachusetts, which had been fostered by the favor of the parliament and of Cromwell, the people saw much more to fear than to hope in the restoration of monarchy. They seemed to have judged rightly; for Charles was scarcely seated on the throne, when the celebrated Navigation Act was passed. By this law it was provided, that no produce or merchandize should be imported into the colonies, or exported from them, except in English vessels, navigated by English seamen; and it was forbidden to export the principal productions of the colonies to any country except England. This was the beginning of a system, which was afterwards carried to a greater extent, and which ended in producing the American revolution. These commercial restrictions excited much discontent, and were submitted to with very great reluctance. Every art was used to evade them; and it was a long time, especially in New England, before they were thoroughly enforced.

Soon after the restoration, an increase took place in the number of the colonies. Hudson river, called by the Indians, Manhattan, had been discovered in 1609, by Henry Hudson, an English navigator in the Dutch service. The next year, the Dutch sent ships to open a trade with the natives; and soon after built a trading house on the island of Manhattan, at the mouth of the river. A trading house was also established higher up the river, near where Albany now stands. In virtue of Hudson's discoveries, the Dutch claimed a large extent of territory on both sides the Man-

hattan, to which they gave the name of New Netherlands. But they were regarded by the English as intruders, and in 1613, Captain Argal from Virginia, with a fleet of three vessels, visited the Dutch settlements on the Hudson, and compelled Hendrick Christiaens, the governor, to submit himself and his colony to the king of England, and under him, to the governor of Virginia. The next year, a new governor arrived from Holland, with supplies and reinforcements. He refused to submit to the authority of the English; put himself in a posture of defence; and built a fort at Manhattan, and another, called fort Orange, at the settlement up the river. Two little towns grew up very gradually about these two forts; that at Manhattan received the name of New Amsterdam. But these establishments remained for several years mere places of trade, scarcely deserving the name of a colony. Messengers were sent in 1627, from the Dutch settlements on the Hudson, to the colony at Plymouth, bearing letters of friendship and congratulation; and a trade was opened between the two colonies. In 1629, governor Van Twiller arrived from Holland, with a large number of people; land was granted to the settlers; and the permanent establishment of the Dutch colony may be considered as dating from that year.

It has been already mentioned that the Dutch claimed the country bordering on Connecticut river. This claim, as well as their pretensions to the possession of Long Island, involved them in many disputes with the colonies of Connecticut and New Haven. They had wars, too, with the Indians; and in 1646, fought a great battle at Strickland plain, near the western border of Connecticut, in which they defeated the natives with great slaughter. In 1650, arbitrators appointed by the commissioners of the United Colonies on the one part, and the governor of the New Netherlands on the other, settled the boundaries of the Dutch and English provinces. But a few years after, new disputes broke out, and the commissioners of the United Colonies ordered forces to be raised in expectation of a war with the Dutch. Nothing but the unwillingness of Massachusetts to act in a business in which she was not immediately concerned, prevented hostilities.

In 1626, a Company for making settlements in America, had been formed in Sweden, under the patronage of

the famous Gustavus Adolphus. The next year, a company of Swedish colonists arrived in Delaware bay. They purchased, of the Indians, the country from Cape Henlopen to the falls of the Delaware, and in 1631, built fort Christiana on the west side of that river. They laid out a small town about this fort, and made their first settlements there.\* They called the river New Swedeland Stream, and the country New Swedeland. A few other forts were afterwards erected, and small Swedish settlements established in their vicinity. But the Dutch claimed all this territory as falling within the bounds of their province of New Netherlands; and in 1655, Stuyvesant, the Dutch governor, attacked the Swedish settlements on the Delaware, with an armament of seven ships and 600 men; and made a conquest of all their towns and forts. The principal inhabitants were carried prisoners to Holland; the others submitted to the Dutch government, and received permission to remain in the country. After this conquest, the Dutch occupied the Swedish towns, and made a few more settlements along the Delaware.

The English government had never allowed the claims of the Dutch to the province of New Netherlands; and in 1664, Charles II. granted all that territory to his brother the Duke of York. Captain Nichols, with four frigates and 300 soldiers, was sent to take possession of the country. Governor Stuyvesant was taken wholly by surprise; and though he would willingly have made resistance, was obliged to surrender all the forts and settlements into the hands of the English. The name of New Netherlands was changed to New York, in honor of the Duke. The town of New Amsterdam received the same name; Manhattan island was called York island; and fort Orange named *Albany*.† It was provided by the articles of capitulation, that the Dutch colonists might remain in the country, and should be protected in their persons and property.

Nichols assumed the government of the province. He erected a court, consisting of himself, his council, and the justices of the peace, in which was vested

\* Not far from the present situation of Wilmington.

† Albany was one of the titles of the Duke of York.

every power, executive, legislative and judicial. This court collected into a code the ancient customs of the colony, and framed a body of laws for the government of the province. The town of New York was incorporated as a city, to be governed by a mayor, five aldermen, and a sheriff. It was yet but small and mean; the inhabitants were poor, and the general appearance of the place far from promising. Some of the houses, however, were of brick and stone, handsomely built, and covered with black and red tiles. The land rose with a gradual ascent from the water's edge, and the town presented an agreeable view from the sea. Yet who that beheld it, could possibly have foreseen, in its then insignificant appearance, the future splendors of the great commercial metropolis of the western world?

Soon after the Duke of York had obtained his grant, he conveyed a part of the territory included in it, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. The country conveyed to these gentlemen, received the name of NEW JERSEY, in compliment to Carteret, whose family originated from the island of that name. Philip Carteret, who was appointed governor, arrived in 1665, and took possession of the new province. Some settlements within its limits had already been made by the Dutch; and Carteret sent agents into New England, and elsewhere, to invite emigration. *Elizabethtown*, *Newark*, *Middletown* and *Shrewsbury* were soon settled, principally by emigrants from Long Island. Many people arrived from Scotland, and some from England; and the population would have increased rapidly, had it not been for the frequency with which the province changed owners, and the disputes among themselves, in which the proprietors were, from time to time, involved.

The next province established was CAROLINA. In 1663, Charles II. had granted to Lord Clarendon and others, a tract of country by that name. Two years later, this grant was confirmed, and the limits of the province much extended. A small plantation on the northern bank of the Chowan, had been begun several years before, by emigrants from Virginia. As it fell within the limits of their grant, it was claimed by the proprietors of Carolina, who named it *Albermarle*, and established a government over it. A similar plantation had been begun in 1660, near Cape Fear, by colonists from Mas-

sachusetts. In 1665, this settlement was extended by the arrival of a number of planters from Barbadoes; it was then made a county by the name of *Clarendon*; and John Yeamans was appointed its governor.

Five years after, the proprietors of Carolina sent a number of colonists from England, under the command of  
 1670 William Sayle. They landed at *Port Royal*, and began a settlement there; but a number of them soon removed to a neck of land between the rivers Ashley and Cooper, and laid the foundations of *Old Charleston*, which was for several years the capital of the colony. The present city of *Charleston*, which stands three or four miles nearer the sea, was not founded till 1680.

The early planters suffered extremely from the unhealthiness of the climate, and the hostility of the Indians; and the progress of the colony was for some time very slow. The proprietors of Carolina had obtained from the celebrated Mr Locke, a frame of government for their province. But it was so complicated in its provisions, and so oppressive in its operation, as to be extremely disagreeable to the inhabitants; and after several ineffectual attempts to enforce it, was finally abandoned. Carolina remained for many years a single province, but the northern and southern settlements seem always to have had distinct governments.

In 1673, during the war between England and Holland, the Dutch repossessed themselves of New York  
 1673 and New Jersey; but at the peace, which took place the next year, they were restored to the English. English colonists gradually flowed into these provinces, and soon outnumbered the Dutch and Swedes by whom they had been originally peopled.

The good humor which prevailed in Virginia at the restoration of Charles II., was not of long duration. The operation of the navigation act was severely felt; and a war, which had broken out with the Indians, produced many burdens and inconveniences. These discontents increased to such a degree, that in 1676, a part of the province burst out into open rebellion.

The insurgents were headed by Nathaniel Bacon, a bold and ambitious young man, who possessed an engaging person, and a commanding elocution well  
 1676

fitted to rouse the passions of the multitude. The Virginians suffered much from the Indian war, and the languor with which this war was prosecuted, was a favorite topic of complaint among the discontented. Bacon applied to Sir William Berkeley, the governor, to appoint him general against the Indians, and when Berkeley hesitated to comply, he entered Jamestown at the head of 600 armed followers, and by force and threats compelled the governor to yield to his demands. He had scarcely left the town, when Berkeley, at the request of the assembly, issued a proclamation, declaring Bacon a rebel, and commanding his followers to deliver him up, and then to retire in peace to their houses.

Bacon and his forces, enraged at these proceedings, which they called treachery, instantly returned to Jamestown, and the governor, who was totally unable to oppose them, fled to Accomack, the peninsula which forms the eastern shore of Chesapeake bay. The regular government was now at an end, and Bacon, having assembled the most considerable men of the province, prevailed on them to take an oath to support his authority. Berkeley, meanwhile, collected forces, and made inroads into those parts of the country which acknowledged the authority of Bacon. Several sharp conflicts happened, with various success. Jamestown was reduced to ashes, and the best cultivated districts in the province were laid waste, sometimes by one party, and sometimes by the other. This state of things had lasted seven months, when Bacon suddenly sickened and died. None of his followers were able to exercise his influence, and all began to wish for an accommodation. Berkeley promised a general pardon, and the insurgents laid down their arms, and submitted to his government. Soon after, Berkeley was recalled, and colonel Jeffreys was appointed his successor.

For the next ten or twelve years, the government of Virginia was exercised in a very arbitrary manner. The people murmured in secret, but were obliged to submit. The commercial restrictions operated very unfavorably upon the province, and the low price of tobacco, which was almost the only product of Virginia, was a great discouragement to the planters. But notwithstanding these obstructions, the

population and wealth of the province gradually increased, and before the end of the century Virginia could number over 60,000 people.

---

## CHAPTER V.

Affairs of New England. — Philip's War. — New Hampshire made a Distinct Province. — Grant and Settlement of Pennsylvania. — The three Counties on the Delaware. — Massachusetts Charter declared void. — Sir Edmund Andros governor of New England. — Affairs of New York. — Leisler's Rebellion. — New Charter of Massachusetts. — Witchcraft.

It is now time to return to the affairs of New England.

1664 In 1664, Nichols, Cartwright and others, the same persons to whom the conquest of the New Netherlands had been entrusted, were appointed by Charles II. commissioners for visiting the New England colonies. They were authorized to hear and determine all matters of complaint, and to settle the peace and security of the country. The appointment of these commissioners, was the cause of much disquietude, and their conduct did not tend at all to allay it. But their insolence was well met, by the firmness and prudence of the general court of Massachusetts, and although they occasioned a good deal of perplexity and expense, no permanent evil resulted from their appointment.

Nothing of much importance occurs in the history of New England from the appointment of these commissioners, till the breaking out of Philip's war. 1675 Metacom, sachem of the Wampanoags, better known among the colonists, as King Philip of Mount Hope, was a bold, artful, aspiring chief. He had long observed and lamented the extension of the English settlements; he saw the Indians gradually wasting away; and perceived that nothing could save them, except a general confederacy for the complete annihilation of the colonists. He was several years in maturing his plans, during all which interval, the Indians were uneasy, and from time



to time, gave indications of hostility. The colonists perceived the coming storm, and endeavored by treaties and other peaceful measures, to avert it; but it finally burst upon them with sudden and unexpected fury.

Philip began by attacking Swansea, a frontier town of Plymouth colony, and killing a number of the inhabitants. The alarm was immediately given, and in a few days, a considerable body of troops was collected. Major Savage took the command, and after one or two slight skirmishes, he marched into the country of the Wampanoags. But he found the wigwams empty and deserted. The Narragansets favored Philip, and it was to their care, that the Wampanoag warriors had entrusted their women and children. It was therefore resolved to march directly into the Narraganset country, and to bring that tribe to terms. Commissioners were sent at the same time from Massachusetts and Connecticut; July 15 and a treaty of perpetual peace was concluded.

But as the Narragansets were driven into the treaty by the presence of an armed force, they secretly resolved to observe it no longer than the neighborhood of the troops compelled them to do so.

The forces having returned to Taunton, received information, that Philip and his warriors were concealed in a swamp at Pocasset,\* about eighteen miles distant. They marched immediately, and having reached the place, found about a hundred wigwams, lately built, but empty and deserted. The Indians had left their camp, and retired deep into the swamp. The colonists followed; but the ground was so soft, and the thicket so difficult to penetrate, that the companies were soon thrown into disorder. Each man fired at every bush he saw shake, thinking an Indian might lay concealed behind it; and the assailants were in danger of wounding each other. Night came on, and it was judged most prudent to retreat. In this unsuccessful attack the colonists lost sixteen men; how many of the Indians perished is uncertain.

Philip passed into the country of the Nipmucks, a considerable tribe, who inhabited what is now the southern

\* Now Tiverton.

part of the county of Worcester, and in a short time persuaded all the neighboring tribes to take part in the war. As the Indians lived among the colonists, promiscuously in all parts of the country, they could watch their motions, and attack them at every favorable point and unguarded moment. Except the thickest settlements, and the centres of the towns, the country still remained an unbroken forest, enabling the Indians to make their approaches undiscovered, and when they were discovered, favoring their escape.

Besides doing other mischief, the Nipmucks waylaid Captain Hutchinson, as he was marching to Brookfield, and killed sixteen of his men. They afterwards attacked

the town of Brookfield, and destroyed it, except  
Aug. 2 a single house. The Indians on the Connecticut river, began now to take part in the war.

Hadley, Deerfield and Northfield were attacked, and numbers of the inhabitants killed and wounded. Captain Bears was surprised, near Northfield, and slain, with twenty of his men. Unable to keep the enemy at bay, by sending parties against them, the commanders on the river resolved to establish a magazine and garrison at Hadley. There were three thousand bushels of corn at Deerfield, and Captain Lathrop with eighty men, was sent to guard the wagons employed to remove it to Hadley. He was attacked by several

hundred Indians, and after a brave resistance  
Sept. 16 was slain, with all his company. Captain Moseley marched from Deerfield to his assistance, but arrived

too late to give any effectual aid. Moseley fought the Indians two hours, and being reinforced by Major Treat, and a body of Moheagans, the only tribe that remained faithful to the colonists during this war, he succeeded in putting the enemy to flight. Springfield and Hadley were soon after attacked. The Indians rushed to the assault with great fury; but the garrisons made a brave defence,

and after suffering considerable loss, repulsed the  
Oct. enemy. The Indians at Penicook, and other places on the Merrimack, began now to attack the towns in their neighborhood, and the whole of Massachusetts was in the utmost alarm.

About the time that Philip made his first attack, the settlements in Maine were assaulted by the Tarrenteens, or East-

ern Indians. They plundered and burned the houses, laid waste the towns, and murdered the inhabitants. Elated with success, they advanced into New Hampshire, and attacked the settlements in the neighborhood of the Piscataqua, spreading terror and destruction wherever they came.

At a meeting of the commissioners of the United Colonies, the deputies from Plymouth presented a narrative, giving an account of the origin and progress of the Indian hostilities. The commissioners resolved, that the war was just and necessary, and that it ought to be prosecuted at the common expense. They accordingly ordered a thousand men to be immediately raised for this service.

Although the Narragansets had not yet openly joined in the war, they had, on many occasions, favored and assisted the hostile Indians. They could muster 2000 warriors, and if they should take part with Philip, the destruction of the colony seemed inevitable. Taking these facts into consideration, the commissioners of the United Colonies resolved to raise an additional thousand men to march into the Narraganset country, and attack that tribe before they could form any further concert with Philip.

The command of these forces was given to Mr Winslow, governor of Plymouth. The troops mustered at Pettaquamscot; and though the ground was covered with a deep snow, at break of day, on the 19th of December, they began their march into the country of the Narragansets. The enemy were fifteen miles distant, strongly fortified in a thick swamp.\* As the colonists approached, the advanced parties of the Indians fired a few shots, and immediately fled. The colonists pursued, and entering the thicket, followed the Indians to their fortress. It stood on an island, or rising ground, in the midst of the swamp, and was built of palisades, driven firmly into the earth, and surrounded by a hedge, nearly a rod thick. It had but one entrance, which was quite narrow, and defended by a block-house in front, a flanker on the left side, and by a large tree thrown across the passage way. The only place where an entrance could be forced into the fort, was through this passage. The captains advanced boldly towards it, at the head of their companies. The Indians kept up a well directed fire, and many of the assailants fell; but the troops

\* In what is now the town of South Kingston in Rhode Island.

pressed on, and with desperate efforts forced the passage. The Indians fought bravely, but after a contest of two or three hours, they were defeated, and driven out of the fort. The soldiers then set fire to the wigwams, which were near 600 in number. The corn and other stores of the Indians were consumed, and many of their old men, women and children perished in the flames. Of the colonists, 230 men were killed or wounded; the Narragansets were supposed to have lost near a thousand of their tribe. The surviving warriors soon after retreated into the Nipmuck country.

Notwithstanding the signal vengeance inflicted on the Narragansets, the Indians still continued their  
1676 ravages, and during the winter, burned and destroyed many towns. Lancaster, Medfield, Groton, Warwick, Marlborough, Rehoboth, Wrentham, and many others, suffered in this way. Captain Wadsworth, who was sent from Boston with a party of fifty men to re-  
Feb. 10 lieve Marlborough and other towns in that vicinity, fell into an ambush, and all his party were slain, or taken prisoners.

The success of the Indians, and the distress of the colonists, were now at their height. Affairs soon after took a different turn. The people on Connecticut river, surprised a large party of the enemy assembled  
May 19 in their neighborhood, and killed 300 of them.

Captain Dennison, of Connecticut, with a body of troops, composed partly of colonial soldiers and partly of Moheagan Indians, made several successful incursions into the Narraganset country. During one of these expeditions, he took prisoner Nanunttenoo, chief sachem of the Narragansets, who had ventured into his own country to procure seed corn to plant the towns on the Connecticut, which the colonists had deserted. He was the son of Miantinomoh, and inherited all the pride and spirit of his father. His life was offered him on the condition of making peace with the English. But he refused to accept it on such terms; and when told that he was to be put to death, he replied, 'I like it well; I shall die before my heart is soft, or I shall have spoken anything unworthy of myself.' He was delivered up to the Moheagans, and Uncas, their sachem, cut off his head.

Major Talcot, at the head of another party from Connecticut, made several very successful expeditions, and killed and took over 400 of the enemy. By this time, the

Indians were tired of the war. Pursued and hunted from one place to another, straitened for provisions, and weakened by hunger and disease, they began to come in, and submit themselves to the English. Philip collected a strong band of warriors, and returned to his old haunts above Mount Hope.\* But the Massachusetts troops, under captain Church, followed him close, and on the 2d of August, surprised him in his camp, killed 130 of his men, and Aug. 12 took his wife and child prisoners. Ten days after, Church made another attack, in which Philip himself fell. One of his own men whom he had offended, and who had deserted to the colonists, shot him through the heart. This was a finishing stroke. The rest of the Indians fled or submitted, and by the end of the year, the war was over. It was not, however, till the spring of 1678, that peace was concluded with the Eastern Indians.

New England long felt the effects of this short but destructive war. Twelve or thirteen towns were entirely ruined, and many others partly destroyed. A large number of people had lost their houses, goods, corn and cattle. The bravest of their youth had fallen; and the colonists had contracted a large debt, which bore heavily on their diminished resources.

In addition to her other misfortunes, Massachusetts was, about this time, a good deal disquieted by the intrigues of a certain Edmund Randolph, who exhibited complaints in England against the United Colonies for their non-compliance with the navigation act. Much trouble was also experienced from the heirs of Mason and Gorges, who claimed the provinces of New Hampshire and Maine, under the grants made to their ancestors.† In 1677, the colony of Massachusetts purchased of the heirs of Gorges, for £1250 all their claims to the province of Maine, and so settled that part of the controversy.

1680 But three years after, through the solicitation of Mason's heirs, New Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts, and erected into a distinct province. It contained, at this time, four townships, and about 4000 people.

\* Near Bristol, in Rhode Island.

† See p. 34, 36.

The next considerable event in the history of the colonies, is the settlement of PENNSYLVANIA. William Penn, the celebrated Quaker, had, for several years, held an interest in the province of New Jersey, and had by that means acquired a knowledge of the country west of the Delaware. In 1681, in consideration of the services of his father, Admiral Penn, he obtained from Charles II. the grant of a large tract west of that river; and he soon after purchased of the Duke of York the territory which now composes the state of DELAWARE. He immediately set about collecting emigrants, and in 1682, arrived on the banks of the Delaware river, with a colony, composed principally of Quakers. On his arrival, he found in the neighborhood nearly 3000 inhabitants, consisting of Swedes, Dutch and English. He called these people together; made them acquainted with the object of his coming; promised them liberty of conscience, and civil freedom; and recommended to them to live in sobriety and peace. He then proceeded to *Upland*, now *Chester*, where he called an assembly, which passed laws annexing the counties on the Delaware to Pennsylvania, and naturalizing the Dutch, Swedes, and other foreign settlers. He entered into a treaty of peace with the neighboring Indians, which was faithfully observed on both sides for many years; and having purchased of them such tracts of land as he judged necessary, he proceeded to lay out a city to which he gave the name of *Philadelphia*.\* Buildings were immediately commenced, and within less than a year, eighty houses and cottages were completed. A variety of circumstances combined to give the new colony a rapid increase. The soil was fertile, the climate agreeable, and the situation central; while the charter and fundamental laws secured the inhabitants in the enjoyment of civil and religious liberty. Colonists flowed in from all quarters, sometimes five or six thousand a year; and the population rapidly increased.

The three lower counties on the Delaware, or the *Territories*, as they were sometimes called, remained united with Pennsylvania, till 1703, when they were erected into a separate jurisdiction. But they continued under the same proprietor and governor with Pennsylvania, till the beginning of the American revolution.

\* A Greek word, which signifies brotherly love. This name was chosen in allusion to the principles of the Quakers.

The colonies, equally with the other parts of their dominions, felt the tyrannical principles of government professed and practised, by Charles II. and his brother and successor, James II. The free constitutions of New England were particularly offensive to these unprincipled monarchs; and proceedings were instituted in the English courts, for depriving the colonies of the charters, by which their several forms of government were authorized and guaranteed. The English judges held their offices at the pleasure of the crown, and their judgments were very apt to conform to the wishes of the king. Connecticut and Rhode Island submitted; and surrendering their charters without a trial, threw themselves on the royal clemency. Massachusetts, more determined, stood out till the  
 1684 last moment, and her charter was, at length adjudged void, by a decree of the high court of Chancery.

Having lost their charters, the New England colonies lost with them, the right of electing their own  
 1686 governors. Sir Edmund Andros was appointed by king James, governor of New England and New York, and arrived at Boston, about the end of the year 1686. He exercised his authority in a very arbitrary manner; levied taxes at his will and pleasure; and pretending that since the charters were avoided, all grants of land, made under them, were void also, — he compelled the owners to take out new patents for their land, for which  
 1688 he exacted exorbitant fees. By these and various other oppressions he gained, in a short time, the hatred of the whole country. The inhabitants submitted, though sullen and dissatisfied, till news arrived that the people of England, wearied out with the tyranny of James, had invited the prince of Orange to come over from Holland and assume the government. The fire which had been long smothered now broke out. The inhabitants of  
 1689 Boston rose in arms, and gained possession of the castle, the other fortifications, and the Rose frigate which lay in the harbor. They seized Andros and his principal abettors, and compelled the venerable governor Bradstreet, and others who had been magistrates under the old charter, to resume their authority. Connecticut and Rhode Island followed the example of

Massachusetts ; and as their charters had never been adjudged void, they resumed them, and with them their ancient form of government.

During the first twenty years after the conquest of New York, that province was governed in the most arbitrary style. But the people having petitioned the Duke to allow them some share in the government, particularly the liberty enjoyed in all the other provinces of choosing an assembly ; in 1682 he appointed colonel Dongen governor, who called, the next year, the first provincial assembly of New York. This assembly consisted of a council of ten persons, appointed by the duke, and a house of representatives, eighteen in number, chosen by the people. They held two sessions, and passed some important laws ; but the duke did not continue the privilege, and a general discontent and uneasiness was the consequence.

The news no sooner arrived at New York, that the people of Boston had deposed Andros, than a large party, at the head of whom were Jacob Leisler and Jacob Milborn, resolved to imitate their example. They seized Nicholson, the lieutenant governor ; gained possession of the fortifications ; and Leisler, with a number of others, denominated a committee of safety, assumed all the powers of government.

Meanwhile the prince of Orange became king of England, under the title of William III. ; and in the  
1691 spring of 1691, colonel Slaughter, whom he had appointed governor, arrived at New York. Leisler knew of his appointment ; but intoxicated with the love of power, or influenced by some inexplicable motive, he refused obedience to Slaughter, and openly resisted his authority. The people of the province viewed the subject in another light. They submitted to Slaughter's authority, and Leisler and Milborn were taken prisoners, tried for high treason, and executed. Slaughter soon after called an assembly, which continued to meet regularly every year ; and the government, from this time forward, was conducted on more liberal principles.

The first charter of Massachusetts having been declared void, it was necessary to apply for another. King William granted a new charter, but it was far from being so broad and ample in its provisions as the old one. Among other things, the king retained the right of appointing a governor



for the province; and no act of the general court could become a law, till it had been approved by the king and his ministers. Sir William Phipps was appointed the first royal governor. He arrived in the spring of 1692, bringing the new charter with him. By this charter the colony of Plymouth and the province of Maine were united to Massachusetts, and became parts of it.

When governor Phipps arrived, he found the country suffering under a severe and singular calamity. This was the era of the *Salem witchcraft*, — a scene of most extraordinary fraud and imposture, commenced by four young girls, who perhaps, aimed at nothing except to attract public attention and pity by pretended suffering; — sustained by the superstition of the times, and at length producing a universal panic. This excitement began at Salem, and was confined principally to the county of Essex. Certain persons, the bewitched, or ‘afflicted,’ as they were called, suffered, or pretended to suffer, from the contrivances and cruelty of the witches. They were pinched, pulled, bruised, pricked, cut, thrown into fits, and otherwise tormented by invisible agents. This was the operation of witchcraft; the manner of discovering a witch was as follows. The afflicted accused certain persons as the authors of their sufferings; these persons were sent for; the afflicted were blindfolded, and the accused brought near them. If the sufferers showed no particular agitation, this was thought a presumption of innocence. But it most generally happened, that the afflicted screamed, cried out and fell into fits. This was looked upon as conclusive proof of guilt; the accused were instantly committed to prison, and assured, that the confession of their crime was the only way to save their lives. Thus beset, many did confess, and told the most absurd and ridiculous stories, about the compacts they had made with evil spirits, the witches’ meetings they had attended, their riding through the air on broomsticks, and other similar nonsense. These confessions were afterwards retracted; but the delusion was too strong to be easily dissipated, and it was only a sense of personal danger that put an end to the popular phrensy. The first person accused was an old and friendless Indian woman; but as the afflicted grew bolder, persons of every

rank and situation were implicated. During six months no man's life was safe. Children informed against their parents, and parents against their children. The only certain way to escape accusation was to turn accuser. To doubt the veracity of the afflicted, or to recommend caution and care, was almost certain destruction. The jails were filled with prisoners; twenty persons suffered death, and many others were tried and found guilty. Everybody, at length, began to fear for their own safety, unless some speedy end could be put to these singular proceedings. This personal danger contributed to open the eyes, even of the most superstitious, and the delusion passed rapidly away; — but not without leaving a dark blot on the history of New England.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

Effect on the Colonies of the accession of King William. — French Settlements in Acadie and Canada. — The Five Nations. — Population of the Colonies at the beginning of the first French and Indian War. — Destruction of Schenectady. — Commissioners meet at New York. — Port Royal taken. — Destruction of York and Oyster River. — Expedition against Quebec. — Port Royal recovered by the French. — Peace of Ryswick, 1697. — War Renewed. — Deerfield destroyed. — Port Royal taken. — Unsuccessful Attempt on Quebec. — Peace of Utrecht, 1711. — Affairs of the Middle and Southern Colonies. — Wars with the Southern Indians. — Carolina becomes a Royal Province.

THE revolution which placed William III. on the throne of England, saved the liberties of the colonies, but involved them in a series of expensive and harassing wars. Louis XIV. was now king of France. He had, for several years, been aiming at universal dominion, but had been constantly opposed in all his undertakings, by the Prince of Orange; and this prince had no sooner become king of England, than war was declared between the two countries. A war between France and England brought on, as a matter of course, a war between the French and English colonies.

The French had very early made discoveries in America, and attempted to plant colonies there. The voyages of Verrazzano and Cartier have been already mentioned, as well as the attempts of the French to colonize the coast of Florida.\* Many other voyages had been made, and settlements from time to time attempted, both by public authority and private enterprise. But most of these undertakings had proved unsuccessful; and at the time of which we are now speaking, the French had but three colonies on the continent of North America, neither of which was very flourishing or populous. These colonies were *Louisiana*, which took no part in the early French and Indian wars, and of which we will speak more at large hereafter; *Acadie*, since called Nova Scotia, and *Canada*. Port Royal,† the capital of Acadie, had been founded by De Monts, as early as 1605; and three years later Champlain had commenced a settlement at Quebec, the capital of Canada. But notwithstanding their antiquity, the whole population of both colonies did not much exceed 20,000 souls. The French, however, had succeeded in acquiring a great influence over the Indians in their neighborhood. Assisted by this alliance, and protected by the severity of the climate, and the impassable forests and morasses, by which they were surrounded, the Canadians, during four successive wars, and for a period of more than seventy years, were enabled to resist all the attempts, made by the English to conquer their country.

As the Indians of the Five Nations, or the Iroquois, as they were called by the French, made a considerable figure in these wars, it will be proper to give some account of them here. These five allied tribes, were the Mohawks, the Senecas, the Oneidas, the Onondagos, and the Cayugas. In 1712, the Tuscaroras, a tribe from North Carolina, were added to the alliance, and the confederacy then took the name of the Six Nations. The country of the Iroquois was in the western part of what is now the state of New York; but they had extended their conquests far and wide, had conquered the Delawares and other tribes, inhabiting what is now the state of Pennsylvania, and had overrun all the western part of Maryland and Virginia. In courage, ferocity and warlike enterprise, as well as in their social institutions,

\* See Chapter First.

† Now Annapolis.

and the arts of peace, they surpassed all their neighbors; and in all these respects were far superior to the feeble and puny tribes of New England and Virginia. The Five Nations had long been engaged in wars with the French, and the Indians in their alliance; and, for a long series of years, they proved themselves faithful allies of the English.

At the beginning of the first French and Indian war, the whole population of the English colonies did not much exceed 200,000. Of this population, about half were seated in New England.

Count Frontenac, the governor of Canada, though in his sixtyeighth year, possessed all the activity, courage and enterprise of youth. His province had lately been desolated, and Montreal destroyed, by an invasion of the Five Nations; but he no sooner heard of the rupture between France and England, than he despatched three war parties, by three different routes, to attack the English settlements. One of these parties, consisting of one hundred and fifty French, and as many Indians, after a march of twentytwo days, through a wilderness covered with deep snow, reached Schenectady, a village of New York, on the Mohawk river, inhabited principally by Dutch settlers. The gates were found unshut and unguarded, and the inhabitants all asleep.

Feb. 8 Having entered the town, the assailants divided themselves into parties of six or seven, and attacked every house at the same time. The doors were broken open, the houses set on fire, and the men, women and children massacred, with all the rage of Indian barbarity. Sixty were killed, and twentyseven taken captive; the rest of this unfortunate people fled, half naked, along the road to Albany, through a deep snow and terrible storm.

The other two expeditions were equally successful. One of them attacked Salmon Falls in New Hampshire, the other, Casco, in Maine; and their success was disgraced by cruelties, similar to that practised at Schenectady.

These specimens of what might be expected from a French and Indian war, filled the country with alarm; and the general court of Massachusetts wrote to the governors of the neighboring colonies, desiring them to appoint commissioners to meet and consult upon measures proper to be taken to insure the common safety. The commissioners

met at New York, in the spring of 1690; and this appears to be the first instance of a Congress of the Colonies.

Two years before, the Eastern Indians had begun to make inroads on the settlements in Maine, and Andros, while he remained governor of New England, had made some ineffectual attempts to subdue them. They were now supplied with arms and ammunition, by the French of Acadie, and began to carry on the war with new vigor. As the most effectual way to reduce the Indians, was to cut off the source of their supplies, the general court of Massachusetts resolved to attack Port Royal, the capital of Acadie. A fleet of eight small vessels, and an army of between seven and eight hundred men, under the command of Sir William Phipps, were sent on this expedition. The fortifications of Port Royal were in no condition to stand a siege, and the town surrendered, after a very slight resistance. Phipps took possession of Acadie, as well as of the coast  
May between Port Royal and the English settlements, and all this extensive territory was included in the new charter of Massachusetts.

Encouraged by their success against Acadie, the people of New England fitted out an armament of twelve hundred men, which sailed, under the command of Phipps, to attack Quebec. But finding the place much stronger than he had expected, Phipps was obliged to return without effecting anything. Success had been confidently expected; the immediate return of the troops was quite unlooked for, and no sufficient provision had been made for paying them. There was danger of a mutiny; and as the necessary funds could not be provided, the government of Massachusetts issued bills of credit, as a substitute for silver. This was the first paper money ever issued in America.

A desultory war continued to be carried on, which, though it did not furnish many striking events, caused a heavy expense, and much individual misery. The frontier settlements were attacked, one after another, and many of them were completely broken up. The Indians were seldom seen before they did execution. They would lie in ambush for days, near the roads and villages, till they found some good opportunity for executing their purposes. Sometimes they killed on the spot all who fell into their hands;

at others, they spared the lives of the prisoners; but only to carry them into a captivity worse than death.

In 1692, the town of York, in Maine, was surprised by a party of Indians. Seventyfive of the inhabitants were killed, and as many more taken captive. Wells was soon after attacked, but the inhabitants made a stout resistance and drove off the assailants. Two years after, the Sieur de Villieu, a French partizan officer, with two hundred and fifty Indians, fell upon the village of Oyster River, now Durham, in New Hampshire, and killed or took one hundred people. Out of twelve garrison houses, five were taken, but the other seven were boldly and successfully defended.

The colonists regarded Canada as the true source of these hostilities, and earnestly solicited the English government, to send an expedition against that province. Several such expeditions were planned, but none carried into execution. Instead of extending their conquests, the English lost what they had already taken. In 1696, Port Royal was recovered by a body of French troops, under Villeborne, who had a commission as governor of Acadie. Several attempts were made to dislodge him; but they were unsuccessful, and the whole province submitted to his authority.

At length the peace of Ryswick terminated the war between France and England, and hostilities with the Canadians ceased immediately. The Indians kept up their depredations awhile longer; but in the course of the next year general tranquillity was restored.

Peace was no sooner established, than disputes arose between the French and English governments, respecting the boundaries of their American possessions; and these, combined with other more important controversies, growing out of the politics of Europe, soon occasioned the recommencement of hostilities.

The weight of this second war, so far as the colonies were concerned, fell exclusively on New England. At this time, the influence of the French was not sufficiently extensive to engage the Indians, south of New York, into a war with their colonial neighbors; and New York itself, was protected by a truce which had lately been made between the French and the Five Nations. Through fear of interrupting this truce, the governor of

Canada avoided sending any war parties, in the direction of New York. But the frontiers of New England were swept by a predatory and desolating war, which, though attended by circumstances of no peculiar interest, brought with it much expense, and infinite individual distress. Tragedies, similar to those of the last war, were acted anew.

On the night of the 28th of February, 1704, a body  
1704 of three hundred French and Indians, commanded by Hertel de Rouville, a famous partizan officer, made a sudden attack on the town of Deerfield, situated near the western frontier of Massachusetts. The sentinels were asleep, and the assailants entered the town without opposition. The inhabitants slept, for greater safety, in a large garrison house; but the snow lay in such drifts, that the French found no difficulty in leaping over the palisades, by which the house was surrounded. They killed fortyseven of the inhabitants, took one hundred and twelve prisoners, and having set fire to the town, returned to Canada. In 1708, the town of Haverhill, on Merrimack river, was attacked by a similar party, and underwent a similar fate.

In 1707, Dudley, the governor of Massachusetts, projected an expedition against Port Royal, with the united forces of the New England colonies; but the attempt proved unsuccessful. Three years after the town was

1710 taken by a fleet and army under colonel Nicholson, and in compliment to queen Anne, its name was changed to Annapolis. The next year, General Hill sailed against Quebec with a fleet of sixtyeight

1711 ships, and an army of 6500 men. As the vessels were advancing up the St Lawrence, during a dark and stormy night, several of the transports were wrecked, and 1000 of the soldiers perished. Disheartened by this loss, the fleet returned without making any further attempt. The depredations on the frontiers continued, but no other event of importance occurred, till the war was ended by the treaty of Utrecht. By the twelfth article of that treaty, Acadie, and its dependences were ceded to England.

During these two wars, commonly known in New England as the wars of King William and Queen Anne, the people of Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia, enjoyed a profound peace, and advanced continually in wealth and population. The colony of Carolina was not so fortunate

The people of that colony were involved in continual and vexatious disputes with the proprietors of the province, and from time to time, experienced the calamities of war. In the war of 1702, the Spaniards were the allies of the French. They had several forts and settlements in Florida, and Mr Moore, the governor of the southern settlements of Carolina, proposed an expedition against St Augustine. The colonists eagerly embraced the proposal; but the expedition proved unsuccessful, and involved them in a heavy debt. They were more fortunate in a war against the Appalachian Indians, a tribe that dwelt between the rivers Savannah and Alatamaha. Many of the Indians were killed and others taken prisoners; their country was plundered, their towns burned, and the tribe was compelled to submit to the authority of the English.

In 1706, the Spaniards, who claimed the whole of Carolina, as a part of their colony of Florida, made a descent upon the coast with an armament, consisting of five vessels and four hundred men; but Sir Nathaniel Johnson, the governor, took effectual measures for the safety of the colony, and repelled the invaders, after killing and taking prisoners, three hundred of their number.\*

In 1712, the Corees, Tuscaroras, and other tribes of North Carolina, formed a conspiracy for the extermination of the English settlers in that neighborhood. Having built a strong fort for the protection of their women and children, the warriors divided themselves into small parties, and entered the settlements, by different roads. They mingled with the unsuspecting inhabitants, and kept up the appearance of friendship, till the appointed night arrived, when they fell upon the whites, and murdered all on whom they could lay their hands, without distinction of age or sex. Such families as escaped assembled together, the men remaining constantly under arms, till succors could come from the southern settlements. At length, colonel Barnwell arrived with six hundred militia and four hundred friendly Indians. The confederated tribes stood a battle, but were defeated with the loss of three hundred killed and one hundred taken prisoners. After this

\* The cultivation of rice, had been introduced into Carolina, in 1695; it had now become the great staple of the country,



they retired to their fortified town, where Barnwell attacked them a second time, and compelled them to sue for peace. In this war the Tuscaroras are supposed to have lost a thousand men. Those of them who survived, abandoned their country, and united with the Five Nations.

Two or three years after, the Yamasses, a powerful tribe, that dwelt along the northern banks of the Savannah, formed a similar plot for the destruction of the southern settlements of Carolina. They were joined by the Creeks, the Congarees, the Cherokees and the Catawbias, and drove the planters on all sides, into the city of Charleston. Governor Craven took the most vigorous measures; he proclaimed martial law, and laid an embargo on all ships, to prevent either men or provisions from leaving the city. Having mustered all the militia, and armed such of the slaves as could be trusted, he marched out of Charleston to meet the enemy. The Indians were assembled at a place called the *Saltcatchers*, and here a very obstinate engagement was fought. At last, the English prevailed; the Indians were broken, pursued into their own country, and driven over the river Savannah.

The disputes between the proprietors of Carolina, and the inhabitants of the colony, increased from year to year, till at length, they reached such a height, that the planters refused any further obedience to the proprietary government. At the same time, they applied to the king and parliament for redress; and the proprietors, finding it useless to struggle any longer, with such unwilling subjects, were persuaded to receive an equivalent in money, and to surrender to the crown, their right and interest in the colony.

Francis Nicholson was appointed the first royal governor. The first act of his administration was, to establish a solid peace with the Creeks and Cherokees. He then turned his attention to internal affairs, — the encouragement of education, and the promotion of agriculture, — and was instrumental in introducing many valuable improvements into the colony. In 1729, the settlements were divided into the two provinces of North Carolina and South Carolina.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

Affairs of New England. — Lovewell's War. — Controversy in Massachusetts respecting the Governor's Salary. — Grant and settlement of Georgia. — War between England and Spain. — Oglethorpe lays siege to St Augustine. — Spaniards invade Georgia. — Third French and Indian War. — Expedition against Louisburg. — The Colonies alarmed by a French Fleet. — Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748.

NEW ENGLAND had now enjoyed a considerable interval of peace and prosperity. But in 1722, the provinces  
 1722 of Massachusetts and New Hampshire, were involved in a new war with the Eastern Indians. The Indians complained that the colonists encroached upon their land. The colonists ascribed the hostile disposition of the Indians to the influence of Father Rallè, a French Jesuit, a man of learning, talents and address, who resided among them as a missionary. Difficulties had existed for several years, but the immediate cause of hostilities was, an attempt, on the part of the colonists, to seize Rallè, who resided at Norridgewock, on the river Kennebec. This proceeding was not, perhaps, perfectly justifiable, and was much resented by the Indians, who immediately commenced hostilities. A second attempt on Norridgewock was more successful. Rallè's chapel was destroyed, and himself with about eighty Indians were killed. This war lasted nearly three years, and is commonly known as *Lovewell's war*, because the most striking incidents in it, were those in which captain Lovewell was concerned. This noted partizan led two successful expeditions against the Indians; but in a third attempt, he fell into an ambush and was slain, with a great part of his men. At length, the Indians grew weary of the war, and in 1725 consented to a peace.

About this time the general court of Massachusetts was involved in a violent dispute with Mr Burnet,  
 1725 their governor, on the subject of voting him a permanent salary. According to the Charter, the general court had the power, and were required, to allow the governor, from year to year, such a salary as they might judge competent. But Burnet had been instructed by the king to insist on a law, granting some fixed, and

permanent sum. The general court, unwilling to render the governor entirely independent, refused to pass any such law. The dispute was kept up with great vigor for two years. The governor threatened to complain of the province to the king ; and the king threatened to lay the undutiful conduct of the province, before parliament. But the people of Massachusetts knew their own rights ; they insisted upon them, and the dispute, at last, terminated in their favor.

In 1732, a plan was set on foot for planting a new colony. General Oglethorpe and twenty others, were appointed trustees, and the design was to transport from the mother country, such persons from among the suffering poor as might be willing to seek an asylum, where the means of subsistence were to be obtained, more easily than at home.

1733 A small colony arrived the next year, and founded the town of *Savannah*. The name given to the new province was GEORGIA, in honor of George II. the reigning king of England. Oglethorpe made a treaty with the Creeks, and obtained from them the grant of a large tract of country. He exerted himself in every way to promote the prosperity of the colony, and not altogether without success. New settlers arrived from year to year ; but the progress of the colony was much hindered by certain unwise regulations, which the trustees had adopted respecting the tenure of land ; and the prohibition of slavery which at first prevailed, prevented many from settling in the new province. It was not till 1752, when the trustees surrendered their charter, and a government and laws were established similar to those of the Carolinas, that the colony begun to flourish.

In 1739, certain difficulties which had long existed between England and Spain, concerning trade with the Spanish colonies, terminated in a war. The people of Georgia and South Carolina bore no good will to their Spanish neighbors in Florida. They ascribed two insurrections, which had lately happened among the slaves, to the effect of Spanish intrigue ; and they believed that the neighboring Indians had more than once, been instigated by the Spaniards, to make war on the English colonies. When

1740 Oglethorpe proposed an expedition against St Augustine, both Georgia and South Carolina readily

consented to take a part in it. Oglethorpe mustered an army of 2000 men, partly colonists and partly Indians. He marched into Florida, took one or two forts, and laid siege to St Augustine. But after meeting with many disasters, and losing some of his men in battle and more by sickness, he was obliged to raise the siege, and return home.

Two years after, the Spaniards retaliated, and invaded Georgia; but the courage and address of Oglethorpe  
 1742 baffled all their plans, and they were obliged to retreat without effecting anything.

There was an intimate alliance between the crowns of France and Spain; and the war between Spain and England had not continued long before France took a part in it.

The first intimation, which Massachusetts had of  
 1744 this new war, was an expedition under the command of Du Quesnel, which surprised the fort at Canso, on the coast of Maine, and took the garrison prisoners.

The next year, Mr Shirley, governor of Massachusetts, proposed a plan for attacking Louisburg, and after  
 1745 some hesitation, the General Court agreed to it.

This fortress was situated on the southeastern shore of the island of Cape Breton, and had been built with great care, and at a great expense. In peace, it was a safe retreat for such French vessels as happened to be driven on the coast; in war, it gave the French cruisers such facilities as enabled them almost to ruin the trade and fisheries of the English colonies. Circular letters were sent to all the colonies, as far south as Pennsylvania, requesting assistance, but no province south of New England complied with the request. An army of 4000 men was raised, transports were hired, and the command of the expedition was given to William Pepperill. The troops arrived at Canso on the 4th of April, but were obliged to wait there for the melting of the ice by which the island of Cape Breton was surrounded. While the troops remained at Canso, admiral Warren arrived from England, with four ships of war, and after consulting with Pepperill, he proceeded to cruise before Louisburg. On the 30th of April, the troops landed on the island, and immediately began their approaches against the town. The general was a merchant, nor was there any one in the army of much military skill; but the bravery of the troops was seconded by a variety of fortunate accidents, and on the 16th of June, the town surrendered.

This bold and successful enterprise attracted much attention, both at home and abroad. It gave a striking proof of the growing strength of the colonies, and of the active and vigorous spirit by which they were actuated. Pepperill, the leader of the colonial troops, received the honors  
1746 of knighthood. The next year, a large number of colonial troops was assembled for the purpose of invading Canada; but the aids which were expected from England did not arrive, and nothing was done. So far from attacking their neighbors, the colonies began to be alarmed for their own safety. A large French fleet, under the duke D'Anville, arrived on the coast of Nova Scotia, and spread universal alarm throughout the English colonies. Troops were everywhere assembled, the old forts garrisoned, and new ones built. But a violent storm, which shattered the French fleet, a pestilential fever which prevailed among the troops, and the sudden death of the admiral, compelled the French to abandon the enterprise, and relieved the anxiety of the colonies.

The next year, there were some small military expeditions, but none of much interest or consequence. The peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, which was ratified toward the end of 1748, terminated the war.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

Disputes between the French and English respecting the boundaries of their North American Colonies. — French Colony of Louisiana. — Respective strength of the French and English Colonies. — Mission of major Washington. — Battle of the Great Meadows. — Scheme for a Union of the Colonies. — Expedition to Nova Scotia. — Removal of the Acadians. — Braddock's defeat. — Defeat of Dieskau. — Treaty with the Cherokees. — Forts at Oswego, and Fort William Henry taken by Montcalm. — Great exertions of the Colonies. — Louisburg taken. — Abercrombie repulsed at Ticonderoga. — Fort Frontenac surrenders. — Fort Du Quesne deserted by the French. — Amherst drives the French from Ticonderoga and Crown Point. — Fort Niagara taken. — Wolfe sails for Quebec. — Battle of Quebec — The City surrenders. — Battle of Sillery. — Montreal, and the other French posts capitulate. — War with the Cherokees. — Peace of Fontainebleau, 1763. — War with the Western Indians — Peace.

THE peace of Aix-la-Chapelle was of no long continuance.

1748      New disputes between the governments of France and England concerning the boundaries of their possessions in America, soon brought on a new war.

The English colonies stretched along the Atlantic coast from north to south. The settlements were bounded on the west by the Alleghany mountains, but the English claimed an indefinite extent of country, stretching beyond those mountains towards the Western Ocean. The French colony of Canada extended along the great lakes to the north of the English territory; but there was another colony much farther south, which was now growing into importance. The French of Canada had been told by the Indians of a great river far to the west; and as early as 1673, Joliet and Marquette had been sent by the governor of Canada to explore it. They travelled through the wilderness from lake Michigan to the Mississippi; sailed down that river as far as the mouth of the Arkansas, and returned by land to Canada.\* In 1630, Father Hennepin explored the upper Mississippi, and reached the falls of St Anthony; and two years after, Le Salle sailed down the river to the gulf of Mexico. He took formal possession of the country

\* Ferdinand de Soto had discovered the country on the Mississippi 130 years before; but his countrymen did not follow up his discoveries, and they were now scarcely remembered. See chapter I.

on the banks of the Mississippi, and named it *Louisiana*, in honor of Louis XIV., the French king.

Several attempts were made to establish a colony near the mouth of the river. But the undertaking was attended with little success, till the year 1717, when the city of *New Orleans* was founded. The unhealthiness of the climate, wars with the Indians, and those other misfortunes to which new settlements are always exposed, retarded the progress of this colony; but by the year 1750, it had increased considerably, and the French had established forts and trading houses along the whole course of the Mississippi, and upon many of its principal branches. They pretended that the English provinces were bounded by the Alleghany mountains; and claimed the whole country watered by the Mississippi and its branches, as having been the first discoverers. They had formed a plan to unite the two colonies of Louisiana and Canada by a chain of forts, which would completely hem in the English, and prevent them from extending their settlements westward of the Alleghanies.

The whole population of New France,—for under this general name all the French possessions in America were included,—did not much exceed 50,000; the population of the English colonies was over a million. Yet notwithstanding this disparity of numbers, there were several circumstances which gave the French a considerable advantage over their English neighbors. Their whole territory was under the command of a single governor, while the English colonists were divided into several distinct jurisdictions. The French had great influence over all the Indian tribes; and except the Five Nations, who adhered to the English, most of the other Indians were their faithful allies, and afforded them great assistance in the course of the war.

The French governor having formed his plan, proceeded to carry it into execution. He erected new forts and trading houses; forbade the English traders to come  
 1753 among the Indians: and seized all who disobeyed his commands. Dinwiddie, governor of Virginia, alarmed at these encroachments, resolved to send the French governor a message, asking an explanation of his conduct, and requiring him to desist. He selected for this service, George Washington, a major in the Virginia militia, who, though not yet twentytwo, had already been noted

as a young man of much promise. After a journey of four hundred miles, half of which lay through a country inhabited only by Indians, Washington reached the French posts on the Ohio, and delivered his message to St Pierre, the commanding officer.

An unsatisfactory answer was given, and more vigorous measures now became necessary. A regiment was raised and despatched towards the disputed  
 1754 country. Major Washington, on whom the command devolved, by the death of the colonel first appointed, fell in with a detachment of the French forces, which he defeated. But as he was pressing on, to dislodge the enemy from fort Du Quesne, — a fortification commanding the course of the Ohio, lately built at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela, — he was attacked at the Great Meadows by a much superior force, and after a gallant defence, compelled to surrender.

A war was now inevitable, and a convention of delegates from the several colonies was assembled at Albany, to make a treaty with the Five Nations, and secure their friendship and alliance. At this convention, a plan of UNION was proposed, for the purpose of enabling the colonies to carry on the war with more effect. The scheme agreed upon by the convention was as follows. A grand council, consisting of delegates from the several colonies was to be established, with a president general, to be appointed by the crown, who was to have a negative on all their proceedings. This council was to enact laws of general interest; to apportion the quotas of men and money to be raised by each colony; to build forts; regulate the armies; and concert such measures as might be necessary for the common safety and welfare. This scheme of union was never carried into effect. It was rejected in America, because it gave too much power to the crown; it was disapproved in England, because it left too much authority with the colonies.

The war had no sooner broken out, than the Indians, in small parties, with all their customary cunning  
 1755 and cruelty, began an harassing warfare against the frontiers of Virginia and New England. But it was not by Indian skirmishes, that this contest was to be decided. Massachusetts, ever prompt and vigorous, was the first of the colonies to take the field. It has been men-



tioned already, that the French province of Acadie, had been ceded to the English by the treaty of Utrecht. But there was a question as to the extent of Acadie. The French maintained that it embraced only the peninsula of Nova Scotia, and claimed all the country between that river and the Kennebec, as a part of Canada. The English insisted that all the country south of the St Lawrence was included in the cession of Acadie. The French had occupied the contested territory, and erected forts to defend it. It was now resolved to dislodge them. An army of 3000 men, principally Massachusetts troops, under colonel Moncton, a British officer, and general Winslow of the Massachusetts militia, sailed from Boston on the 20th of May, and five days after, arrived at Annapolis. They had little difficulty in compelling the French forts, Beau Sejour and Gaspereau, to surrender, and soon gained possession of the whole country.

When Acadie had been surrendered, in virtue of the treaty of Utrecht, the French inhabitants, influenced by a natural attachment to their mother country, refused to take the oath of allegiance to the king of England, except under condition of never being compelled to bear arms against France. This conditional oath had been disallowed by the English government; but the Acadiens had not been called upon to take any part in the preceding war, and were known by the name of French neutrals. Instead, however, of observing a neutrality, they had uniformly assisted the French in the various contests, which occurred in the neighborhood; and three hundred of them had been taken in arms with the garrison of Beau Sejour. It was judged too dangerous to leave this disaffected people in possession of Acadie, now that a new war was beginning; and if they were ordered to leave the country and suffered to go where they pleased, it was evident they would remove to Canada, and add new strength to the enemy there. The only alternative was, to distribute them among the several English colonies. In execution of this harsh decree, the miserable Acadiens were torn from their homes, and put on board the British vessels. The nearest relatives were often unavoidably separated, and though the firmness and humanity of Winslow were exerted to alleviate their distress, their situation was in every respect, truly pitiable. In a single day they were reduced from com-

petency and contentment, to the lowest degree of poverty and wretchedness. All their land, and other property except money and household furniture, was declared forfeit to the crown; and to prevent the return of any who might escape, the houses were burned, and the whole country laid waste. This is one of those actions, which the common policy of war, no doubt, will amply justify; but which no feeling and generous heart can fail to condemn.

Early in the spring, general Braddock, who had been appointed to the chief command in America, arrived in Virginia with a number of British regiments. A convention of the colonial government met him there, and resolved upon three distinct expeditions against the French. The most important, — that against fort Du Quesne, — was led by general Braddock in person. A body of provincial troops, consisting of light companies and sharp shooters, joined the British army, and colonel Washington attended general Braddock, in capacity of aid. The army, consisting of 2200 men, mustered at the most westerly of the English posts, near the head of the Potomac, where the town of Cumberland is now situated. Here they were delayed a long time, waiting for the necessary supplies; and when they began to advance, they were obliged to cut roads through a rough and difficult country, and their progress was extremely slow. Alarmed at this delay, Braddock resolved to leave colonel Dunbar to bring up the heavy baggage by easy marches, and to push forward himself, with all possible despatch, at the head of twelve hundred picked men.

He was warned of the dangers to which he was exposed by the nature of the country, and the character of the enemy with whom he was to contend; and was advised to place the provincial companies in his front, with orders to scour the woods, and discover ambuscades. But the British general held both the enemy and the provincials, in too great contempt, to give any attention to this salutary advice. He pressed forward with fatal security; till having reached an open wood, thick set with high grass, within seven miles of fort Du Quesne, his van was suddenly attacked July 8 by an invisible enemy. The main body advanced, and the assailants were for a moment repelled. But they shortly renewed the attack with redoubled fury, and the English troops were thrown into hopeless confusion.

The French and Indians, concealed beneath the long grass and sheltered by the trees, poured in a murderous fire upon the close ranks of the British soldiers, who neither advanced nor retreated, but fell unresisting on the very ground where they were first attacked. Braddock exerted himself in vain to restore order ; he soon fell, mortally wounded, and most of his officers shared a similar fate. The provincial companies, well acquainted with the Indian method of fighting, were the only part of the army which made any effectual resistance. They were the last to leave the field, and under the command of colonel Washington, afforded considerable protection to the flying regulars. Those who escaped the carnage of this battle fell back on Dunbar. He relinquished the expedition at once ; destroyed all the stores except those necessary for immediate use, and marched his troops to Philadelphia, where they remained idle the rest of the summer. In the meantime, the frontiers of Virginia, Maryland and Pennsylvania, left defenceless by this precipitate retreat, suffered all the extremities of Indian warfare. The back settlements were broken up ; and such was the universal panic, that even the people on the seaboard did not think themselves secure.

(The second of the expeditions which the assembled governors had planned, was designed against Crown Point, a fortress which the French had lately built near the southern extremity of lake Champlain.) The troops designed for this service, were principally from New England ; they assembled at Albany, and towards the end of August, advanced under general Johnson to the southern end of lake George. In the meantime, the Baron Dieskau at the head of 2000 French troops, descended lake Champlain, with the design of destroying Johnson's army. On the news of his approach, colonel Williams, with a thousand men, was despatched to meet him ; but this officer allowed himself to be drawn into an ambush, and after suffering severe loss, was obliged to retreat. Dieskau approached the English camp, and immediately began a violent assault. It was protected on both flanks by a thick swamp, and in front, by a breastwork of fallen trees ; and Johnson brought several pieces of cannon to bear upon the French, which so alarmed the Indians and Canadians, that they quickly took to flight. The regular

troops soon followed their example, and were pressed by a close and ardent pursuit. A scouting party, that happened to be approaching the camp, fell upon the French baggage, and overpowered the guard. Dieskau himself was mortally wounded, and fell into the hands of the English. This battle was proclaimed throughout the colonies as a great victory. But it was not well followed up. No attempt was made on Crown Point, and the French were allowed to seize and fortify Ticonderoga.

The third expedition was designed against Frontinac and Niagara, — two forts in possession of the French, the one at the northern, the other at the southern extremity of lake Ontario, — and was to be commanded by Shirley, governor of Massachusetts. Late in August he arrived at Oswego, a post on the same lake, held by the English; but heavy and continual rains, the desertion of his Indian allies, and the want of supplies, compelled him to abandon the expedition.

Towards the close of the year, the governor of South Carolina, held a conference with the Cherokees, and obtained from them the cession of extensive tracts of territory. The French made every exertion to seduce the Cherokees from the English alliance, but met with little success. The tribe, at this time, could muster 3000 fighting men, but was very ill supplied with arms and ammunition.

The next year, Lord Loudoun was appointed commander in chief of the English forces in America. But  
 1756 the campaign was quite inactive. Several extensive expeditions were planned, but owing to the difficulty of raising men, the scarcity of supplies, and the breaking out of the small pox among the troops, nothing was done. While the English remained idle, the Marquis de Montcalm, who had succeeded to the chief command of the French forces, sailed down lake Ontario, and laid siege to Oswego. There were two forts, and a garrison of 1400 men; but Montcalm pressed the siege with so much vigor, that a surrender soon became inevitable. At the

Aug. 14 same time a considerable fleet stationed on the lake, fell into his hands. To gratify the Six Nations, in whose country the forts were situated, Montcalm destroyed them, and returned to Canada without leaving garrisons behind him.

The next year, great preparations were made, and a large

1757 fleet and army assembled at Halifax, for an attack on Louisburg, — this fortress having been restored to the French at the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

But the place was so strongly guarded by a fleet and army lately arrived from France, that it was judged imprudent to hazard an attack. While the English troops were drawn off towards Halifax, Montcalm descended from Canada, and laid siege to fort William Henry, a strong post at the southern end of lake George. Here was a garrison of 3000 men; and 4000 men were stationed at fort Edward, on the Hudson, a short distance to the southeast. But notwithstanding the strength of fort William Henry, and the ease with which aid might have been sent from fort Edward, Montcalm pressed the siege with such warmth and ability, that at the end of six days, the fort with all its stores and artillery, was surrendered to the French. The garrison was to

Aug. 9 march out with the honors of war, and to be protected as far as fort Edward. But in spite of all Montcalm's exertions, his Indian allies fell upon the rear of the retreating and disarmed troops; murdered, plundered, and committed the most cruel outrages.

Thus far the progress of the war had been extremely disastrous. With a much inferior force, the French had been almost uniformly successful. They had obtained the entire command of lakes Champlain and Ontario; they still maintained their influence over the Indians, and held undisturbed possession of the country west of the Alleghanies. But a change was now about to take place. The celebrated Mr Pitt, afterwards earl of Chatham, was placed at the head of the English ministry, and the most vigorous preparations were made for prosecuting the war. New England alone raised 15,000 troops; large reinforcements arrived from Great Britain; and general Abercrombie, on whom the chief command had now devolved, found himself at the head of 50,000 men, including garrisons and troops of every description. This was the most powerful army ever yet seen in America.

The first blow fell upon Louisburg. Admiral Boscawen, with thirtyeight ships of war, having on board 14,000 soldiers, commanded by general Amherst, arrived before that fortress on the 2d June. The troops were immediately

landed, and the siege begun. It was prosecuted with the utmost vigor, and the fortifications, in a short time, were reduced almost to a heap of ruins. On the 28th of July, Louisburg, with all its artillery, provisions and stores, together with the islands of Cape Breton and St Johns, were surrendered to the English.

In the meantime an army of 15,000 men, under Abercrombie's own command, was assembled at Albany. They marched to fort William Henry, sailed up lake George, landed at its northern extremity, and after a slight skirmish with the enemy, took post within two miles of Ticonderoga. This fortress was surrounded on three sides by the water, and secured in front by a morass. Nearly 5000 men, in addition to the ordinary garrison, were stationed under the guns of the place. They were covered by a breastwork, the approach to which was defended by trees felled all along the front, with their branches cut, sharpened, and pointed outwards. An assault was, nevertheless, resolved upon, and the storming party were commanded to rush swiftly through the enemies' fire, reserving their own till they had passed the breastwork. The orders were executed and a gallant attack was made; but the soldiers became entangled among the fallen trees, and it was found impossible to carry the breastwork, which was eight or nine feet  
**July 8** high, and much stronger than had been represented. After a contest of nearly four hours, and a loss of 2000 men in killed and wounded, Abercrombie was compelled to order a retreat. He relinquished his design against Ticonderoga, and retired to the southern extremity of lake George.

Not long after, he sent colonel Bradstreet with 3000 men, chiefly provincials, on an expedition against fort Frontinac. Bradstreet marched to Oswego, where he embarked his troops. He landed within a mile of the fort, and in two days opened his batteries upon it. The French  
**Aug. 27** soon found the place untenable, and were obliged to surrender at discretion. A large quantity of arms, provisions and stores, as well as a fleet of nine armed vessels, fell into the hands of the captors.

Early in July, general Forbes, with an army of 8000 men, marched from Philadelphia against fort Du Quesne. After many delays he reached the fort. It had been desert-

ed the evening before by the French garrison, who were utterly unable to defend the place against so formidable an enemy. The English took possession of this important place, and in compliment to the prime minister, gave it the name of Pittsburgh. The English flag was no sooner hoisted than the neighboring Indians began to come in, and propose treaties of peace. In a short time, quiet was once more restored to the frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia.

The next year, general Amherst succeeded to the chief command of the English army; and flushed with  
 1759 the successes of the last campaign, a plan was now formed for the entire conquest of the French possessions. Amherst, with the main body of the forces, advanced anew against Ticonderoga and Crown Point; and after many delays and some resistance, both places fell into his hands. But he was unsuccessful in his endeavors to pass up the lake, and was obliged to winter at Crown Point.

General Prideau, with a strong detachment, sailed from Oswego, and landed near the fort at Niagara. The French alarmed for the safety of this important post, collected a body of regular troops from the nearest garrisons, and having assembled a great number of their Indian allies, resolved to fight a battle in its defence. Prideau had been killed during the siege, and Sir William Johnson had succeeded to the command. He was aware of the movements of the French, and prepared to receive them. They attacked him  
 July 24 in his entrenchments, but were met with firmness, and in less than an hour were completely routed. This battle decided the fate of Niagara, which surrendered the next day.

Meanwhile, general Wolfe, with 8000 men, and a formidable train of artillery, embarked at Louisburg under convoy of several ships of war, and sailed for Quebec. After a prosperous voyage, he landed his troops on the island of Orleans, which divides the St Lawrence just below the city. Quebec stands on the northern bank of the St Lawrence, and consists of an upper and a lower town. The lower town is built on a beach, which stretches along the base of a lofty range of rock, called the Heights of Abraham. On the summit of this range, the upper town is built; and the heights extend nearly parallel with the St Lawrence for a

great distance above the city, affording on this side an almost impregnable defence. Quebec is protected on the east by the river St Charles, which flows into the St Lawrence, just below the town. Several armed vessels and floating batteries were moored in the St Charles; and Montcalm, with a French army, was encamped on its left bank.

Wolfe took possession of Point Levi, on the southern shore of the St Lawrence opposite Quebec, and erected batteries which played upon the town, and destroyed many houses. But the distance was too great for the shot to have any effect on the fortifications. He then resolved to land below the town, and forcing the passage of the Montmorenci, which flows parallel with the St Charles, a little farther to the east, to bring Montcalm to an action. The attempt was made, but owing to the impetuosity of the advanced party, who rushed to the charge before they could be properly supported,

Wolfe's plan of attack was disconcerted, and he  
Aug. 25 was obliged to retreat with a loss of 500 men.

An attempt was next made to destroy the French shipping, and to alarm the garrison by descents above the town. One valuable magazine was burned; but the French ships were well protected, and it was found impossible to approach them. The season of action was fast passing, and if anything was to be done, it must be done without delay. The prospect was discouraging. The place seemed almost impregnable. But Wolfe did not despair. He knew that the city was but partially fortified on the land side, and conceived the bold idea of scaling the Heights of Abraham, and approaching it in that direction. This rocky barrier rose almost directly from the water's edge. There was but one landing place -- a narrow beach, which might easily be missed in the dark -- and the precipices of Abraham were so steep, as not to be easily scaled even by day, and when no opposition was to be feared. Not discouraged by these obstacles, Wolfe embarked his forces, and ordered the ships to move up the river, several miles above the place where the troops were to land. At night, the soldiers were disembarked into flat bottomed boats, and falling down with the tide, they succeeded in finding the landing place. Wolfe was the first to step on shore. The light troops, assisted by the branches of trees, and the rugged projections of the rocks, forced themselves up the heights,



and having dispersed a small party of the enemy, protected the ascent of the rest. Early in the morning, the whole army was assembled on the plains of Abraham.

When Montcalm was informed of this bold and adventurous step, he could scarcely believe the news. He supposed it impossible for an army to ascend such rugged precipices, and concluded that the troops above the city were only a small detachment intended to entice him away from his position on the St Charles. But he soon discovered his mistake; and knowing how slightly the city was fortified on the side towards the land, he saw that nothing but a victory could save it. Accordingly he drew out his forces, and crossing the St Charles, approached the English army.

The French advanced with large bodies of Canadians and Indians in their front, who kept up an irregular Sept. 13 fire upon the English. But Wolfe ordered his men to disregard these skirmishers, and to reserve their fire for the main body of the enemy who were fast approaching. The fiercest of the battle was on the right wing of the English and the left of the French, where the two generals were stationed. The fire was kept up with great spirit on both sides, till Wolfe, while leading up his grenadiers with charged bayonets, received a mortal wound. He fell; but the battle continued. Montcalm was soon after mortally wounded, and the French being closely pressed by the English bayonets, and the broadswords of the highland regiments, began to give way. In a little while, they were entirely broken, and fled partly into Quebec, and partly across the St Charles. The battle was scarcely finished, when De Bougainville, who had been sent by Montcalm with a body of 2000 troops to guard the passes above the city, appeared in the rear of the victorious army. Had he arrived an hour sooner, his presence might have changed the fortune of the day; but as it was, he did not choose to risk a new engagement, and retired when the English advanced upon him.

In a few days Quebec surrendered to the victorious army, and general Townsend, the successor of Wolfe, having left a garrison of 5000 men to keep possession of the city, sailed out of the St Lawrence.

In the meantime, the French, under M. de Levi, concentrated all their remaining forces in the neighborhood of

1760 Montreal. Early the next spring, they advanced against Quebec, with the hope of recovering it before assistance could reach the garrison. General Murray, the governor of the city, wishing, if possible, to avoid a siege, drew his troops out of Quebec, and met the enemy at Sillery. Here a battle was fought with nearly equal loss on both sides, and Murray was compelled to retreat into Quebec. The city was immediately invested, but was soon relieved by an English fleet. The besiegers then retired to Montreal.

All the efforts of the English were now directed against this last strong hold of the enemy. Amherst, at the head of 10,000 men, marched to Oswego, and embarking his army there, sailed down the lake and the St Lawrence towards Montreal. At the same time, Murray, who commanded at Quebec, sailed up the river, and colonel Haviland passed up lake Champlain, with a detachment from Crown Point. The armies met before the town; and the French governor, unable to oppose so overwhelming a force, was obliged to surrender, not that place only, but Detroit, Michilimackinack, and all the other ports within the boundaries of Canada, then remaining in possession of the French.

This conquest spread universal joy through the colonies. It delivered them from the neighborhood of an active and dangerous enemy, and saved them from those horrors, expenses, and alarms which had never failed to attend a French and Indian war.

Hitherto, the colonies of South Carolina and Georgia, by keeping on good terms with their neighbors, the Cherokees, had enjoyed a profound peace. But this year, the intrigues of the French involved those colonies in a war with that tribe. A severe battle was fought near Etchoe, with nearly equal loss on both sides. The Indians then laid siege to fort Loudoun. The garrison was reduced to extremity of famine, and obliged to surrender. They were permitted to march out on terms, but the Indians fell upon them, and having massacred a number, made the rest prisoners. The frontiers suffered extremely, and earnest applications were made to general Amherst for assistance.

Early the next spring, colonel Grant was sent to Carolina with a strong detachment of regular troops,  
1761 and the colony made great exertions to strengthen

the army, by levying soldiers and assembling large bodies of friendly Indians. Grant marched into the Cherokee country, and another battle was fought near Etchoe. The Cherokees made a brave resistance, but at last gave way. Grant wasted their whole country ; destroying their cornfields, and laying their villages in ashes. The Indians were reduced to the last extremity, and were compelled to sue for peace.

The influence of France had induced the king of Spain to take a part in the war against Great Britain. But this step cost him dear ; for the Spanish possessions in the West Indies were captured one after another, and at last

1763 Havana, the chief city of Cuba, fell into the hands of the English. At the beginning of 1763 a general peace was concluded.

By this treaty, known as the treaty of Fontainbleau, France ceded to England all her possessions in North America, east of the Mississippi, except the city and island\* of New Orleans ; and Spain ceded the Floridas, in exchange for the city of Havana.

The colonists were congratulating themselves on the restoration of peace ; the regular troops were mostly withdrawn, and the back settlements, which had been broken up, were beginning to be reoccupied, when the settlers were alarmed by a new Indian war. There seems to have been a general confederacy of the western and northern tribes, through the influence of Pontiac, a chief of great ability. All the English outposts were attacked at once. Many of them surrendered on terms ; but the terms were disregarded, and the garrisons put to death. Forts Pitt and Detroit, though closely besieged still held out, and efforts were made to relieve them. After some  
1764 hard fighting this purpose was accomplished, and the next year a final peace was made with the Indian confederates.

---

\* What was then known as the Island of New Orleans, is now called the Delta of the Mississippi. In 1763, New Orleans and the rest of Louisiana, were ceded to Spain.

## CHAPTER IX.

Nature of the connexion between the Colonies and the Mother Country. — Stamp Act. — Congress at New York. — Repeal of the Stamp Act. — Duties on paper, glass, &c. — Discontent of the Colonies. — Duties repealed except that on tea. — Boston Massacre. — Insurrection in North Carolina. — Vessels loaded with tea sail for America. — Their reception. — Boston Port bill. — First Congress at Philadelphia. — Battle of Lexington. — Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken. — Battle of Bunker Hill. — Second Congress at Philadelphia. — Washington appointed Commander-in-chief. — Expedition against Canada. — Assault on Quebec. — Boston evacuated. — Attack on Charleston. — Declaration of Independence. — Population of the United States.

THE wars with the French and Indians being terminated, the colonists fondly expected a long interval of peace. They looked up to the mother country with love and reverence. They gloried in her power and her political institutions, and relied undoubtingly on her care and protection. But such is the uncertainty of human affairs, that this tie of fond dependence, strong as it seemed to be, was just on the point of being severed. The bright prospect of peace was soon to be overcast; and the promise of a long period of prosperous tranquillity, was about to disappear amid the tumults of a fierce and desperate conflict.

The power which the British government might rightfully exercise over the American provinces, had  
 1764 never been very accurately settled. The New England colonies, during the earlier periods of their history, had claimed and exercised an almost entire independence; but time and circumstances had compelled them to lower their tone. The southern colonies had always been more under the control of the mother country. At the time of which we are now speaking, it was everywhere agreed, that the American people owed allegiance to the king of Great Britain; and that the British parliament had a right to regulate the trade of the colonies, and to lay such duties and imposts, as were necessary to enforce commercial regulations. Though the famous Navigation Act,\* and other laws passed from time to time, the object of which

\* See p. 30.

was, to give the mother country a monopoly of the colonial trade, were regarded with the greatest dislike, the right of parliament to pass such laws had never been questioned.

But although they yielded this point, the colonists had always steadily maintained that taxes could be levied only by the provincial assemblies. It is a maxim of the English law, that no man can be taxed except by the vote of his representatives in parliament. The colonies were not represented in the British parliament, and of course could not be taxed there. They were represented in their own provincial assemblies, and there was the place where they ought to be taxed. Such was the reasoning of the colonists; and no one had ever doubted its correctness, till Mr Grenville, the English minister, introduced a resolution into the house of commons, and that house voted unanimously, that parliament *had a right to tax* America.

The next year they put this new doctrine into practice, and passed an act laying a tax on legal proceedings, policies of insurance, and other papers used in the transaction of business. None of the instruments enumerated in the act were to be held valid, except such as were executed on *stamped* paper, distributed by the agents of government at a fixed rate. From this circumstance, the law was known as the *Stamp Act*. Colonel Barré, who had served in America, and was well acquainted with the temper of the people, made an eloquent speech against the bill, but it passed by a great majority.

The passage of this bill caused a general burst of indignation, all over the colonies. The assembly of Virginia passed a set of resolutions, declaring the sole right of the colonies to tax themselves. Several other colonial assemblies did the same; and the general court of Massachusetts proposed a congress of deputies from the several colonies, to meet at New York, there to consult on the measures necessary to be taken at this alarming crisis.

This congress, consisting of twentyeight delegates from nine of the colonies,\* met on the 7th of October, and chose Timothy Ruggles of Massachusetts for their president. They prepared a Declaration of the Rights and Grievances of

\* Virginia, North Carolina, New Hampshire and Georgia, sent no delegates to this congress.

the colonies, and agreed upon a Petition to the king and a Memorial to each house of parliament, praying for a speedy repeal of the obnoxious law. In the meantime, riots broke out in Boston, New York and other places, disgraceful in their character, and discouraged by the respectable part of the citizens, but such as plainly showed how highly the feelings of the people were excited. The merchants of New York, Philadelphia and Boston entered into an agreement to import no more goods from England, till the Stamp Act should be repealed; and the excitement of the times was strong enough to produce a general union in this important measure. Though the day had passed, on which the law was to go into operation, business was transacted by common consent, without stamps, and the act was everywhere treated as a mere nullity.

At the next session of parliament, the subject of American affairs was again brought forward, and produced very violent debates. Camden, in the house of lords, and Mr Pitt, (the former minister) in the house of commons, eloquently defended the rights of the colonies; and notwithstanding a strong opposition, the Stamp Act was repealed. This just and politic measure caused great joy throughout America, and was everywhere celebrated by the ringing of bells, fireworks and festivals.

The spirit of opposition, by which the encroachments of the British parliament had been encountered, was warmed and ripened by several able and spirited publications, produced on the occasion, in which a popular view was taken of the question between the colonies and the mother country. Among the most celebrated of these performances, were, 'The Rights of the British Colonies, Asserted and Proved,' by James Otis of Boston; an 'Essay on the Canon and Feudal Law,' by John Adams; an 'Enquiry into the Rights of the British Colonies,' by Richard Bland of Virginia; and 'Considerations on the propriety of imposing taxes on the British Colonies,' by Daniel Dulany of Maryland.

The joy of the colonies at the repeal of the stamp act, was quite premature. The idea of imposing direct taxes was abandoned; but the very next year, parliament passed an act laying duties on paper, glass,

1767

paints and teas imported into the colonies. Here was taxation under pretence of regulating trade. This act, together with two or three others passed at the same session, excited anew the indignation of the colonies; and the 'Farmer's Letters,' by John Dickenson of Pennsylvania, which were published about this time, and universally read, tended to kindle and sustain the public indignation. The provincial assemblies voted resolves, petitions, remonstrances and addresses. The general court of Massachusetts directed a circular letter to all the colonies, calling upon them to unite in such measures as were necessary to obtain redress. The non-importation agreements were renewed; and the seizure of a vessel at Boston, by the revenue officers, brought on a new riot, in which many outrages were committed. Towards the end of the year, several British regiments arrived at Boston. They were quartered on the common and in the public buildings. Cannon were pointed in front of the building in which the general court assembled; guards were stationed at such places as were judged important; and soldiers were constantly in arms in different parts of the town.

Affairs continued in the same troubled state all the next year. Parliament supported the ministers, and the  
1769 colonial assemblies petitioned and remonstrated.

At length Lord Hillsborough, secretary for the colonies, addressed a letter to the several governors, in which he declared, that the minister had no intention to lay any further taxes on America, for the purpose of raising a revenue; and that it was intended to procure a repeal of the present taxes, so far as they were judged contrary to the true principles of commerce.

Accordingly, Lord North, who was now prime minister, proposed a repeal of all the duties except that on  
1770 tea; and after much debate, a law to that effect was passed. But this was far from satisfying the colonies. It was not because they valued the paltry tax of three pence a pound on tea; — but they were opposed, altogether, to the principle of parliamentary taxation; and could not be satisfied while any law, founded upon that principle, remained in existence.

A riot, which happened at Boston on the 5th March, in which the soldiers fired upon the crowd, killed three citizens,

and dangerously wounded five more, tended still farther to exasperate the feelings of the people. This affair was known as the *Boston Massacre*, and for several years was commemorated by a public address. The captain of the party, and eight of his men were committed to goal, and tried for murder. Two of the soldiers were found guilty of manslaughter, — the others were acquitted.

An occurrence in North Carolina, which happened about this time, though not connected with the history of  
 1771 the revolution, deserves some notice. The people in the back settlements were a rude, uncultivated race. They felt, or thought they felt, many oppressions growing out of the administration of justice; and taking the name of regulators, they rose in arms to the number of 1500 for the avowed purpose of shutting up the courts, and destroying the lawyers; and probably with the design of overturning the government. Governor Tryon marched against them at the head of 1000 militia, and totally defeated them in a battle near Almansee. Three hundred of the regulators were found dead on the field; several were taken prisoners, tried and executed.

After many delays, the British government resolved to put the temper of the colonists to an effectual trial.  
 1773 Hitherto, the non-importation agreements had prevented any tea from entering the colonies, and the obnoxious duty had of course remained unpaid. It was thought that if the colonists could be once made to pay the duty, future compliances would be more easy; and the East India Company was ordered to send several vessels loaded with teas to the principal ports of the colonies. The ships which arrived at New York and Philadelphia, were sent back without being permitted to unlade their cargoes. At Charleston, the tea was landed; but it was stored in damp cellars where it soon perished. The people of Boston tried every means to send back the vessels which arrived there, but without success. The masters were willing to return; but they could not obtain clearances at the Custom House; and the governor would not permit them to pass the fort. If the tea were landed, it would probably be sold, and the purpose of the British minister in some measure accomplished. To prevent this, a number of persons, disguised as Indians, boarded the vessels as they lay in the harbor, broke up the tea chests, and emptied their contents into the sea,



This daring outrage provoked the British Parliament to the highest degree; and they immediately passed an act, known as the *Boston Port Bill*, shutting up the harbor of Boston, and removing the custom house to Salem. They passed a second act for regulating the government of Massachusetts bay, the object of which was to alter the charter and abridge the liberties of the province. The earl of Catham\* and Mr Burke exerted all their eloquence in defence of the colonies, but wholly without avail; and the bills passed by very large majorities.

The Boston Port Bill went into operation on the first of June, and at once deprived the greater part of the population of their usual means of subsistence. But the sufferings of the Bostonians found relief in the sympathy of their countrymen. Contributions were everywhere raised; and the people of Salem, unwilling to profit by the distress of their neighbors, gave up their wharves and warehouses to be used by the Boston merchants.

The general court of Massachusetts advised a new Congress, and the proposal was readily acceded to. Delegates from eleven colonies† met at Philadelphia on the 5th of September, and chose Peyton Randolph of Virginia, for their president. After considerable debate, it was resolved, that each colony, whatever were the number of its deputies, should have but one vote. The Congress soon agreed on a Declaration of Rights, an Address to the king, a Memorial to the people of British America, and an Address to the people of Great Britain. These papers were drawn up with great ability, and had a very perceptible influence on public opinion both in England and America. The Congress wrote letters to the people of Canada, and the colonies of Nova Scotia, Georgia, and the Floridas, inviting them to unite in the common cause. After a session of eight weeks, this body dissolved itself; but not without advising that another congress should assemble the next year, unless a redress of grievances should be previously obtained.

In the meantime, additional troops were landed in Boston, and every exertion was made to strengthen the fortifications

\* Formerly Mr Pitt. — He had been lately raised to the Peerage.

† The deputies of North Carolina did not arrive till the 14th. Georgia did not send.

of the town. Gage, who was now governor of Massachusetts, as well as commander of the troops, refused to call a meeting of the general court. But the members assembled notwithstanding, and resolved themselves into a provincial congress. They met at Cambridge; and neglecting the admonitions of the governor, who warned them to desist from such illegal proceedings, they took measures for enlisting an army of 12,000 men, and for calling out the militia as emergencies might occur.

The British parliament remained as obstinate as ever. The petition of congress was refused a hearing; the  
1775 conciliatory bills introduced by Lord Catham were rejected; and acts restraining the trade of the colonies were passed by a large majority. The provincial congress of Massachusetts still continued their preparations for war. Arms and ammunition were collected; stores were laid up, the militia were trained with the utmost assiduity; and a part of them were enrolled as minute-men, who were to be ready for active service at a minute's warning.

The spirit of the people was now about to be tried. A quantity of provisions and military stores had been collected under authority from the provincial congress at Concord, eighteen miles from Boston. General Gage resolved to destroy them; and on the 19th of April, despatched on this service eight hundred grenadiers and light infantry. The detachment commenced its march towards Concord early in the morning. The main body reached Lexington, five miles from Concord, about sunrise, and on the green near the church found a small party of militia assembled and under arms. Major Pitcairn, the British commander, galloped up to them, crying out, 'Disperse, disperse, you rebels; throw down your arms and disperse,'—and when he found the militia rather slow in their obedience, he ordered his troops to fire. Eight were killed and several others wounded; the rest scattered, though not without firing a few shots, and Pitcairn marched on to Concord. The inhabitants had received the alarm, and were posted on a hill in front of the town. But finding themselves too few to cope with the regulars, they withdrew to another hill on the opposite side of the river, where they waited for reinforcements. The British entered the town, and destroyed many of the stores. But the alarm had been given; the militia were fast collect-

ing; and it became necessary to retreat with all possible speed. The people of the neighboring towns were already in arms. They attacked the retreating troops on every side; firing from behind the fences and stone walls; pressing upon the rear; and galling both the flanks. The British were in danger of being entirely cut off, when they were met at Lexington by Lord Percy, who had marched from Boston with 900 men, and two field-pieces to cover their retreat. Percy's division received Pitcairn's exhausted troops within a hollow square, and for a while kept the militia at a distance with their cannon; but the retreat was no sooner renewed, than the attack was renewed also. By sunset, the British, fatigued and almost worn out, reached the neighborhood of Boston. They had lost during the day 273 men. The loss of the militia was eighty-eight.

The battle of Lexington was the beginning of a long war. Throughout the colonies, the forts, magazines and arsenals were seized, troops were raised, and the militia were drilled and disciplined. An army of 20,000 men, principally from New England, collected in the vicinity of Boston, and blockaded the British troops, by whom that town was held.

A small body of men under colonel Arnold, from the camp before Boston, and about the same time, though without concert, a party from the New Hampshire Grants,\* under Ethan Allen, formed a plan for seizing the forts on lake Champlain, which, notwithstanding their great importance, were insufficiently guarded, and in no expectation of an attack. The two parties united, and were completely successful. Without the loss of a single man, they gained possession of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, with all their artillery, ammunition and stores.

The British troops in Boston had received large reinforcements, and their movements seemed to indicate an intention to penetrate into the country. The better to prevent any attempt of this kind, the commanders of the besieging army resolved to take possession of Bunker Hill, near the entrance of the peninsula of Charlestown, and commanding the road north from Boston into the country. A detachment of a thousand men under colonel Prescott, was sent on this service. They marched in the evening, and were to entrench themselves on Bunker Hill during the night. But by some

\* Now Vermont.

mistake they advanced to Breed's Hill, at the further end of the peninsula, and much nearer Boston. They occupied this hill unobserved, and immediately began to fortify it. By morning they had thrown up a considerable redoubt, much to the astonishment of the British, who immediately opened a heavy fire upon them from their ships in the river, and their batteries in Boston. The provincials, nothing dismayed, labored on under a shower of shot and shells, till they had completed a small breastwork, extending easterly from the redoubt to the water.

While the provincials held Breed's hill, Boston was not secure; and Gage thought it necessary to dislodge them immediately. Ten companies of light infantry, ten of grenadiers, and a body of artillery, were ferried across the river, and landed at the foot of the hill. But observing the firmness of the provincials they waited the arrival of additional forces. In the meantime, the Americans received a reinforcement under generals Warren and Pomeroy; and the troops stationed west of the redoubt, where there was no breastwork, pulled up the neighboring fences, and placing them in parallel lines, a little distance apart, filled up the interval between with the new mown hay which lay scattered about the hill; and thus formed an imperfect cover from the fire of the enemy. The British were now reinforced, and advanced to the attack, drawn up in two June 17 lines. The artillery played on the redoubt and breastwork, and the beautiful village of Charlestown wantonly set on fire by the enemy, and soon wrapped in flames, gave additional grandeur to the scene. The British moved slowly on; and the provincials, calm and steady, awaited the attack. The enemy had approached within a hundred yards of the breastwork, when at once, a sheet of fire burst from the American lines; and the quick and heavy discharge of musketry, kept up without intermission, and directed with unerring aim, spread death and confusion among the British ranks. They stopped, wavered, and then broke, and fled in great disorder towards the landing place. But they were rallied by their officers, and again brought to the charge. The provincials waited as before; again they renewed their fatal fire, and again the enemy fled back in confusion. They were rallied with difficulty, and reluctantly advanced a third time. The powder of the pro-

vincials began to fail, and their fire was less heavy than before. Some cannon had been pointed so as to sweep the breastwork from end to end; the fire from the ships, the batteries, and the field artillery was redoubled; and the British troops pressing forward, carried the redoubt at the point of the bayonet. The provincials had no bayonets; but they defended themselves as well as they could with the butt ends of their muskets; and effected a retreat over Charlestown neck without any considerable loss, though the road was continually swept by the fire of the British ships. The battle was lost; but the provincials considered such a defeat as equivalent to a victory. They had met the disciplined troops of Britain, and come off with honor. Out of 3000 men engaged in the battle, the British had lost over 1000 in killed and wounded. The provincials engaged did not exceed 2000; their loss was 452. The gallant general Warren was among the slain. The British occupied Bunker's hill, and fortified it; but the blockade of Boston was kept up as before.

In the meantime, a second Congress had assembled at Philadelphia. They met on the 10th day of May, and on the 19th, chose John Hancock of Massachusetts for their president. They again petitioned the king, and addressed the inhabitants of Great Britain; but at the same time, began to take more vigorous and efficient measures for enforcing their rights. They assumed the style of the TWELVE

UNITED COLONIES; \* voted an army of 20,000 June 15 men; appointed George Washington commander in chief; and issued bills of credit to defray the expenses of the war. Washington arrived at Cambridge on the 2d of July, and immediately entered on the chief command. He found the troops full of zeal and spirit, but poorly armed, equipped and disciplined. He made every exertion to cure these defects, and to push the siege of Boston with vigor.

Armed vessels were fitted out in the ports of New England, and cruised with great success. They took several ships laden with ammunition and stores for the British army, and contributed much to relieve the scarcity of these articles, which prevailed in the American camp, and impeded every active operation.

\* Georgia as yet had sent no delegates to this Congress, and did not join in the measures of the other colonies till July.

The inhabitants of Canada were mostly of French origin. They knew little of the rights of British subjects; cared perhaps little about them; and had taken no part in the opposition to the British government. But as the facilities of water communication exposed the colonies to invasion from that quarter, it was judged necessary to get possession of the Canadian fortresses, and to induce the inhabitants of that province to unite with the other colonists, in resisting the encroachments of the mother country. General Montgomery had been appointed to the chief command in the northern department. He ascended lake Champlain with an army of 2000 men, and having entered the river Sorel, succeeded in reducing the forts, Chamblee and St Johns. He then advanced upon Montreal. The few British troops there, endeavored to escape down the river, but Nov. 12 were intercepted and taken prisoners. Montreal immediately submitted; and Montgomery having left a garrison, pushed on towards Quebec.

In the meantime, colonel Arnold had been detached from the camp before Boston, at the head of a thousand men with orders to march on Quebec in a different direction. He ascended the river Kennebec to its source; and then striking across the unexplored wilderness, directed his march for the capital of Canada. The troops endured incredible hardships, from the scarcity of provisions and the difficulties of the route; and one division, in order to escape starvation, was obliged to return. But at the end of six weeks, the other division reached the St Lawrence, and encamped on the southern bank of that river, opposite Quebec. Arnold's sudden and unexpected appearance, caused the greatest alarm; and could he have crossed the river immediately, the city, most likely, would have fallen into his hands. But the boats had been removed or destroyed; and several days elapsed before he was Nov. 14 able to pass the river. He landed on the narrow beach; and ascending the same steep and ragged precipices which Wolfe had climbed before him, he drew up his little army on the plains of Abraham. The inhabitants and garrison of Quebec had recovered their courage, and taken every precaution for the defence of the city. Arnold summoned them to surrender, but his flags were fired at, and no answer returned. He was in no condition

to undertake a siege, and withdrew his troops twenty miles up the river to wait the arrival of Montgomery.

Montgomery was obliged to leave so many garrisons and detachments behind him, that when he  
Dec. joined Arnold, their united forces did not exceed a thousand men. They marched back to Quebec, and opened batteries on the town; but their artillery was not heavy enough to produce any effect upon the fortifications. After waiting nearly a month, they resolved to attempt an assault. This attempt was almost desperate; but it was their only resource. To distract the attention of the garrison, two false attacks were made upon the upper town; while the real attacks were made on opposite sides of the lower town, by two divisions under Montgomery and Arnold. Early in the morning, in the midst of a heavy fall of snow, which concealed them from the sight of the garrison, the troops moved to the as-

Dec. 31 sault. Montgomery was slain at the first barrier; and his party retreated without making a second attempt. Arnold, who attacked the town on the other side, pressed swiftly on through an incessant fire of grape shot and musketry; but just as he reached the first barrier, the bone of his leg was shattered by a musket ball, and he was carried back to the camp. Not discouraged by the fall of their leader, captain Morgan, with his company of riflemen, rushed on; passed the first barrier; carried the battery beyond, and made the guard prisoners. Morgan formed his men; but the morning was dark; he had no guide, and was totally ignorant of the situation of the town. Under these circumstances, he judged it best to proceed no farther. He was joined by some fragments of other companies, and when the day dawned, found himself at the head of about two hundred men. They called upon him to lead them against the second barrier, which was only about forty paces in front, though concealed from their view by an angle in the street. Morgan accordingly advanced. The soldiers planted their ladders against the barricade; but they were received with a heavy fire, and those who ascended the ladders saw on the other side, double ranks of soldiers with their muskets planted on the ground, presenting a hedge of bayonets to any who should attempt to leap the barricade. Exposed in a narrow street

to an incessant fire, the ranks of the assailants were soon thinned. Those who escaped, threw themselves into the stone houses on either side of the way. Here they continued the contest some time longer; but they were benumbed with cold; the snow had rendered their muskets unserviceable, and they were obliged to surrender prisoners of war. Four hundred men were lost in this unlucky assault. Arnold retired three miles down the river with the remainder of his army, and though inferior in numbers to the garrison, kept up the blockade through the winter.

Large supplies were voted for the northern army; but they arrived very slowly. The garrison of Quebec received reinforcements from England, and began to act on the offensive. The American army was in no condition to offer effectual resistance. It was driven from one post to another, and by the middle of June was obliged to evacuate Canada entirely.

Meanwhile Washington continued the siege of Boston. He met with many obstacles in the scarcity of military stores, and the undisciplined state of the army. But he was of a temper not easily to be discouraged. He labored day and night to reduce the army to order; and to devise the means of driving the enemy from Boston. With the design of compelling them to quit the town, or else to risk a battle to preserve it, he secretly sent a strong detachment on the night of the 4th of March, to take possession of Dorchester Heights,\* an elevation which overlooks and commands the waters of Boston harbor. The troops labored hard; and by the morning had thrown up a considerable entrenchment. Unless the provincials were driven from this ground, it would be impossible for the British ships to lie safely in the harbor. Preparations were accordingly made for an attack; but a furious storm prevented the troops from embarking, and in the meantime, the works were so far strengthened, that an attack was judged impracticable. It was now necessary to evacuate the town. The British troops retired to Halifax, and Washington entered Boston in triumph. But fearing for the safety of New York, he soon after fixed

\* Now called South Boston Heights.



his head-quarters there; and the army marched in several divisions for the neighborhood of that city.

The British possessed great advantages in the complete command they had of the ocean. They could attack the most distant places at the same time, or suddenly concentrate their forces on one point. On the 28th of June, the city of Charleston in South Carolina was attacked by a British fleet, under Sir Peter Parker. The town was defended by a fort on Sullivan's island, commanded by colonel Moultrie. He gave the English ships so warm a reception, that after an action of ten hours, they were obliged to sheer off, extremely shattered, and with a loss of more than two hundred men. The loss of the garrison was only thirtytwo.

The disputes with the mother country had now terminated in open war; all hope of reconciliation was past; and the colonies took the bold and decisive, but judicious step, of declaring themselves, Free and Independent States. Congress had the question of independence under consideration for a considerable time. It was moved by Richard Henry Lee of Virginia; and at first there was some diversity of opinion. John Adams of Massachusetts, argued in favor of the motion, and John Dickenson of Pennsylvania, spoke eloquently against it; but after a full discussion, the measure was approved of by a unanimous vote. John Adams, Thomas Jefferson and Roger Sherman had been appointed a committee to draw up a Declaration of Independence. This declaration was subscribed by the members of congress, and published on the 4th of July, 1776.\* After stating those unalienable rights which are the birthright of all mankind, and reciting the injuries and usurpations of the British government, it mentions the repeated petitions for redress, which had been answered only by repeated injuries, and concludes in the following energetic terms. 'We therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world, for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these united colonies are, and of a right ought to be, FREE

\* It is understood to have been written by Mr Jefferson

and INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connexion between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be totally dissolved; and that as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things, which independent states ought to do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

From this time the colonies are known in history, as the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA. At the declaration of independence the population of the United States was about three millions. This population was scattered along the coast from Maine to Georgia, and in no part of the country extended to any considerable distance inland. The Alleghanies were a barrier which had not yet been passed.

---

## CHAPTER X.

Howe arrives before New York. — Battle of Long Island. — New York evacuated. — Battle of White Plains. — Fort Washington taken by storm. — Fort Lee abandoned. — Washington retreats through the Jerseys. — Battle of Trenton. — Battle of Princetown. — Washington recovers the Jerseys, and takes post at Morristown. — Organization of the Army. — Stores destroyed at Peekskill. — At Duxbury. — Meig's Expedition to Long Island. — Howe sails for the Chesapeake. — Lands at the head of Elk. — Battle of Brandywine. — Wayne surprised. — Philadelphia evacuated. — Battle of Germantown. — Battle of Red Bank. — Attack on fort Mifflin. — Communication opened between the British army and fleet.

ABOUT the end of June, general Howe, who had succeeded Gage in the chief command of the British forces in America, arrived before New York, and landed his troops on Staten island. Admiral Howe arrived soon after with reinforcements from England; and the British army amount-

ing to 24,000 men,\* in the highest state of equipment and discipline, prepared for active operations. The American troops were about 27,000; but of these near one quarter were sick, and a large part were militia, very insufficiently armed. General Sullivan with 15,000 men, was entrenched at Brooklyn on Long island; the remainder of the army occupied different stations on York island.† The British general resolved to make his first attempt against the troops on Long Island; and with this design he crossed over from Staten, and landed his army on the opposite shore. Between the station now occupied Aug. 22 by the British army, and the American camp at Brooklyn, there extended a range of thickly wooded hills, crossed by three different roads. The Americans were advanced considerably beyond their camp, and were stationed along the foot of these hills. Orders had been given to guard the passes with the utmost watchfulness. But these orders were not sufficiently regarded; and the British army advancing by night along the three roads, passed all the defiles, and attacked the Americans early the next morning. The right of the British suc- Aug. 27 ceeded in turning the American left; and pushed in between the centre and the camp. The centre being closely pressed in front, and perceiving that the British right had gained their rear, began to retreat. But they were met and opposed by the British right; and were for some time driven backward and forward between the two hostile corps. Some forced their way through the enemy and escaped into Brooklyn; others saved themselves in the coverts of the woods; but the greater part were killed or taken. The right of the Americans succeeded in getting into Brooklyn; but lord Stirling, their commander, was taken prisoner. The British army encamped immediately in front of the American line, and began to make preparations for an assault. But on

\* A considerable part of these troops were Hessians, hired in Germany. The English government found it cheaper to employ German than English soldiers; but the introduction of foreign troops into their country, tended not a little to exasperate the feelings of the American people.

† Otherwise called Manhatta, the island on which the city of New York is built.

the night of the 30th, the troops effected a retreat across the East river,\* unobserved by the enemy, and landed in safety on the shore of York island. In this battle, the British lost 450 men; the loss of the Americans was much more severe, though it was never very accurately ascertained. The British took over 1000 prisoners; and in prisoners, killed, wounded and missing, the loss of the Americans probably exceeded 2000 men.

Obstructions had been sunk in the North and East rivers, and batteries had been erected at every convenient point. But in spite of all attempts to prevent it, the British ships passed up both of the rivers; and general Howe, with his army crossed the East river, and landed on York island three miles above the city. The troops who were ordered to oppose the landing of the British, panic struck by the late disaster on Long island, fled in the greatest disorder; and Washington, who was in no condition to risk a battle for its safety, found himself obliged to abandon New York. He lost but few men in his retreat; but was compelled to leave behind him all his heavy artillery and baggage, and much of his provisions and military stores. The British army entered New York on the 15th of September. The Americans retired to the northern part of York island, where they occupied a strongly entrenched camp. But they were not permitted to retain this station long; for general Howe passed up the East river, landed a large part of his army above the American camp, and made it necessary for Washington, either to abandon his present lines, or suffer himself to be inclosed in them. After hearing the advice of a council of war, Washington resolved to abandon the whole of York island except fort Washington on the Hudson, in which was left a garrison of 3000 men, and to retreat up the river.

Both armies now moved by nearly parallel roads towards White Plains. They were separated only by the river Bronx, a small stream which flows southerly into Long island sound; and several skirmishes took place from time to time. The American army having encamped at White Plains, was attacked by the British, and a considerable ac-

\* The channel which separates Long island and York island is called the East river; the Hudson is often called the North river.

tion took place. The contest was animated, but  
Oct. 28 short and indecisive. The loss was about equal,  
and amounted on either side to between three and  
four hundred men. The British army was soon after reinforced, and preparations were made for a second attack. But Washington withdrew by night, and took post on the heights of North Castle,—a position so strong as to secure him from any immediate danger.

The British general, having been baffled in his attempt to force Washington into a battle, now turned his attention towards acquiring complete possession of York island. The Americans still held fort Washington on that island, and opposite to it, on the Jersey shore, fort Lee. These two fortresses commanded, in a considerable degree, the navigation of the Hudson; and on that account general Howe was anxious to get possession of them. With this design, he moved his forces down the river, and Washington, suspecting his intention, left general Lee with 7500 men to guard the camp at North Castle; crossed the Hudson with the rest of his army; and moved down the river to fort Lee. In the meantime, Howe collected all his forces in York island, and on the 16th of November, fort Washington was assaulted by the British army. They made the attack in four divisions. The place was bravely defended by colonel Magaw; but the outworks were soon carried by the enemy; the fort was too small to contain all the garrison; Magaw's ammunition was nearly exhausted; and he was obliged to surrender himself and his troops, prisoners of war. This was a severe blow to the Americans, and the greatest loss they had yet suffered. In storming the fort, the British lost over 800 men, but the number of American prisoners exceeded 3000. The British soon after crossed the Hudson, and approached fort Lee. The garrison was too small to make any effectual resistance, and the place was instantly evacuated.

Washington had taken post at Newark; but his army was now much reduced by the losses of the campaign, and by the departure of those soldiers whose term of service had expired. His whole force, exclusive of the troops at North Castle, did not exceed 3000 men fit for duty; and *they* were without entrenching tools; and exposed to the severity of the season without tents, badly armed, worse clad, and destitute even of blankets. The British, flushed with success, were ad-

vancing in great force to attack him; and there was no other resource but a further retreat. After a vain attempt to raise the militia of the Jerseys, he retired to Brunswick, on the Raritan. The British troops pursued, and Washington retreated to Princetown; from Princetown he retired to Trenton, and at Trenton he crossed the Delaware to Nov. 28 the Pennsylvania side. The pursuit was urged with so much rapidity, that the rear of the Americans employed in pulling down bridges, was often within sight and shot of the van of the British, employed in building them up.

Washington secured all the boats on the river, and placed his men so as to guard the principal fords. Great fears were entertained that the British would pass the river, and attack Philadelphia. Congress adjourned their sittings to Baltimore; lines of defence were drawn about Philadelphia; fifteen hundred militia were collected to reinforce the army; redoubts were thrown up opposite the principal fords; and the river was watched with the greatest care. Orders were sent to general Lee, to leave the passes on the Hudson to the care of the New England militia, and to march with all speed to join the army of Washington. Lee preferred a separate command, and was not over hasty in obeying these orders. He proceeded slowly through the northern part of the Jerseys, along a road about twenty miles west of the British army. During the march, he quartered carelessly under a small guard, at a house three miles distant from his main body; where he was surprised and taken prisoner by a corps of British cavalry. General Sullivan, the next in command, led the troops across the Delaware, and formed an immediate junction with Washington. A second reinforcement, consisting of a part of the northern army, arrived soon after, under general Gates, and Washington now mustered about 7000 regular troops.

Instead of attempting to cross the Delaware, Howe had distributed his troops into winter quarters. His forces were a good deal scattered. About 4000 men were cantoned on the Delaware, at Trenton, Bordenton and Burlington; and strong corps were posted at Princeton, Brunswick and Elizabethtown. Washington observed the scattered situation of the British, and knowing how much the spirits of the army and of the people had been sunk by the disasters

of the preceding campaign, resolved, if possible, to strike a blow, such as might humble the enemy, encourage his own troops, and rouse the spirit of the nation.

On the night of the 25th of December, he crossed the Delaware, about nine miles above Trenton, at the head of 2400 men, and marched down the river in two Dec. 26 columns, by two different roads, to attack the troops stationed at that place. Both columns arrived at Trenton, about eight in the morning. They drove in the outposts, and pressed forward into the town. Colonel Rawle, who commanded there, drew up his men, and prepared to make a vigorous resistance; but he was killed in the beginning of the action, and his troops immediately gave over, and attempted to retire by the Princeton road. Washington threw a detachment into their rear which cut off their retreat; and finding themselves surrounded, they threw down their arms, and surrendered prisoners of war. About twenty of the enemy were killed, and 1000 taken prisoners. Six field-pieces, and a thousand stand of arms were also taken. The Americans had two killed, two frozen to death, and three or four wounded. Their success would have been still greater, but the river was so full of ice, that two other divisions, which were to have crossed at the same time, and attacked the enemy at Bordentown and Burlington, found it impossible to effect a passage.

The British, utterly astonished at this mark of vigor in an enemy whom they thought reduced to the utmost extremity, — broke up their cantonments on the Delaware, and retired to Princeton. Washington immediately crossed the river, and established himself at Trenton on the eastern bank.

The British, under Lord Cornwallis, advanced in  
1777 great force upon Trenton; Washington, retiring as they approached, crossed a small stream which runs through that town, and drew up his army on the other side. The enemy attempted to cross, but finding all the fords guarded, they halted, and kindled their fires. A cannonade was kept up on both sides till dark.

Washington was now in a very delicate situation. If he waited till morning he would certainly be attacked, and probably defeated; for the forces of the enemy were in all respects superior to his own. The Delaware was now filled with ice, which rendered the passage of the river so

difficult, that he would not probably be able to effect it in the face of the enemy, without great loss, or perhaps, a total defeat. At any rate, if he retreated, the Jerseys would be lost, and Philadelphia endangered. After considering the whole subject, he formed the daring plan of marching into the rear of the British; attacking their troops at Princeton; and then pushing on towards Brunswick, where were the magazines and baggage of the British army. This, he judged, would be the most effectual way of drawing the enemy from Philadelphia.

As soon as it was dark, the baggage was removed; and about one o'clock, after renewing their fires, and  
Jan. 3 leaving sentinels to go the rounds, as if the army was still encamped, the Americans moved silently off towards Princeton. Having arrived at that town, they found it occupied by three British regiments, whom they immediately attacked. One hundred of the enemy were killed, and 300 taken; a part forced their way through the American line, and escaped to Trenton; the rest retreated to Brunswick. The Americans lost 100 men; general Mercer, a valuable officer, was among the slain.

When the morning came, and Cornwallis found the American army gone, he instantly suspected Washington's whole plan, and became extremely alarmed for his magazines at Brunswick. He immediately put his troops in motion, and was close upon the rear of the Americans before they could leave Princeton. Washington was again in great danger. His troops were fatigued and exhausted; they had all been without sleep one night, and some of them longer; they had no blankets; many were barefoot, and the whole, very thinly clad. Under these circumstances, he gave up his design on Brunswick, and retired to Morristown, where he could put his troops under cover, and give them some necessary repose. Howe concentrated his forces at Brunswick and Amboy, and nearly the whole of New Jersey was overrun and held by the American militia. The inhabitants had been greatly incensed at the outrages everywhere committed by the British troops, and took every occasion to cut off straggling parties of the enemy.

The late successes of the American arms had revived the spirits of the people; and the recruiting service, which before was almost at a stand, received a new impulse. Con-



gress, during the darkest times, had preserved the same fixed and determined spirit; and now that fortune seemed once more to smile on the American cause, every exertion was made to rouse the states to vigorous preparation for the next campaign.

There was no one circumstance which caused Washington so much perplexity as the short periods for which his soldiers were engaged to serve. They were enlisted only for a year; and when the time of their service had expired, they left the army without a moment's delay, — sometimes whole regiments at once, — and often at seasons of the greatest danger and distress. More than once, the army was at the point of a total dissolution. Added to this, was the great reliance placed on the militia, who were often called out for three or six months to supply the place, and perform the duties of regular troops, — a service for which they were totally unfit. Washington made such earnest representations to Congress, and to the individual states, that at length it was resolved to enlist troops to serve for three years, or during the war.

Besides its other deficiencies, the army had been almost destitute of cavalry, and very ill provided with artillery and engineers. But measures were now taken for raising a body of horse; and the artillery was increased to three regiments, and constituted a brigade, under the command of general Knox. A corps of engineers was likewise formed, consisting principally of foreign officers, under the command of general the chevalier du Portaille.

While the two armies lay, the one at Morristown, and the other at Brunswick, skirmishes were repeatedly taking place between advanced parties. Washington's army was, in fact, extremely weak. A large part of the old troops had left him, their term of service having expired, — and the new levies came in very slowly. Bodies of militia joined him from time to time; he posted them judiciously, and made the best show he could; but after all, he had only the shadow of an army. Happily the enemy were ignorant of his real situation; and in the skirmishes which took place, his parties were almost always successful. The British quarters were straitened; their supplies were cut off; and they were reduced to great distress for forage and fresh provisions. But the weakness of Washington effectually restrained him from any very vigorous operations.

Besides the main army encamped at Morristown, there was a body of American troops, under general M'Dougal, stationed at West Point on the Hudson, to guard the passes of the highlands. This station was looked upon as of great importance; for if the British should gain the command of the Hudson, the communication between New England and the states further south would be entirely cut off. The highland had therefore been carefully fortified, and large magazines of provisions and other stores had been laid up there, both on account of the strength of the place, and the convenience of the situation. The most southern post on the river, held by the Americans, was Peckskill, about fifty miles above New York. Mills had been built here, and large stores of flour and provisions collected.

When the spring opened, general Howe sent a **March 23** detachment up the river to attack this post, and succeeded in destroying stores to a considerable amount.

Another detachment of 2000 men, under general Tryon, was soon after sent against Danbury, in Connecticut, where was another depot of provisions and stores. The British sailed up the sound; landed between Fairfield and Norwalk; and reached Danbury unmolested. They set fire to **April 27** the town and magazines, and all was destroyed.

In the meantime, about 800 militia were collected by generals Arnold,\* Stilman and Worster, and measures were taken to intercept the retreat of the British. They were attacked three several times; once by Worster and twice by Arnold; but they succeeded in repelling the assailants, and effected their escape. In this expedition the British lost 170 men. The loss of the militia was about 100; Worster and some other valuable officers were among the slain.

These incursions of the enemy were soon after retaliated by colonel Meigs. He embarked at Guilford, in Connecticut; crossed the sound; landed on Long Island, and surprised a post of the enemy's at Sag Harbor. He killed **May 23** six of the British, took ninety prisoners, burned twelve vessels loaded with forage for the army at

\* Arnold held a command in the regular army, but happened at this time to be in Connecticut.

New York, and returned without the loss of a single man.

Towards the end of May, Washington moved from Morristown, and established himself on very strong ground at Middlebrook, about ten miles from Princeton. This movement was made in order to cover Philadelphia, and at the same time keep possession of the Jerseys. He had about 10,000 troops,—an army altogether inferior to the forces the British could oppose to him; but he was so strongly posted at Middlebrook, that Howe did not dare to hazard an attack. After a variety of manœuvres, of which the design was to draw Washington from his camp, and bring him to a battle on equal ground, the British general gave up the idea of reaching Philadelphia through the Jerseys; and having withdrawn all his troops into Staten island, he prepared to assail that city in another direction.

After keeping Washington in a long and perplexing suspense, Howe sailed from Sandy Hook, with an army of 18,000 men. Having entered the Chesapeake, he passed up that bay, and landed his forces at the head of Elk river. The head of Elk is about sixty miles from Philadelphia; and on the 8th of September, the British, in two columns, commenced their march for that city. Washington, in the meantime, had drawn his troops to the south of the Delaware, and now advanced in full force to meet the enemy. Great exertions were made to assemble the neighboring militia, and they joined the army in considerable numbers. After some manœuvring and several skirmishes, Washington retired behind the Brandywine, a small creek everywhere fordable,—and having drawn up his army awaited the attack of the enemy. One column, under general Knyphausen, approached the Brandywine, and threatened to force a passage at Chadd's ford; while the other column, under Cornwallis, having made a great circuit and passed the creek higher up, marched down upon the American right. Washington ordered three of his divisions to oppose Cornwallis; one was stationed at Chadd's ford to keep Knyphausen in check; while Greene's division took a central station, ready to act as circumstances might require. As Cornwallis approached, his troop deployed, and immediately commenced a vigorous

attack. Sullivan's division, on the American right, had but just taken their ground, and were in some disorder. The action was warm and this division soon began to give way. The enemy pressed on; attacked the other divisions in flank, and the American troops continued to break off from the right, till the whole line gave way and fled in disorder. The action was no sooner begun, than Washington marched with Greene's division to support Sullivan; but he only arrived in season to cover the retreat.

Meanwhile Knyphausen crossed the Brandywine, and the defeat of the other divisions being known, the troops opposed to him retired without attempting any resistance. The whole army retreated to Chester that night, and next day to Philadelphia. In this action, the behavior of the troops was by no means uniform. Several of the old regiments stood their ground with the greatest intrepidity; while others, especially among the new levies, gave way at once. The American loss was about nine hundred; the British, five hundred.

After refreshing his army, Washington again advanced upon the British, and a second battle was hourly expected. But the armies were separated by a violent storm, which damaged the arms and ammunition of the American soldiers, and totally unfitted them for a battle. Washington now found himself obliged to retire across the Schuylkill. But Wayne's division remained on the other side of the river, for the purpose of harassing the enemy; and Sept. 20 lay concealed in the woods on the left of the British army. Information was conveyed to the enemy of Wayne's situation; he was surprised; defeated with the loss of three hundred men; and obliged to retreat across the river. Washington now took post at Pottsgrove, on the Schuylkill; and Howe having crossed the river somewhat lower down, placed himself between Philadelphia and the American army.

As the two armies were now situated, nothing but a battle and a victory could preserve that city from falling into the hands of the British. But all things considered, Washington resolved not to risk another battle. He was decidedly inferior in numbers; his troops had been much fatigued and harassed by recent marches, and were greatly deficient in clothing, and those other supplies so essential

to the vigor and spirit of an army. In expectation that Philadelphia would be ultimately lost, the magazines and public stores had all been removed. Congress adjourned to Lancaster; and on the 25th of September, Howe took possession of the city.

It now became Washington's great object to compel the British to evacuate Philadelphia. Fort Mifflin stood just below the city, on Mud island, a low, flat bank of mud and sand, situated at the confluence of the Schuylkill and the Delaware; and at Red Bank, on the Jersey shore, opposite Mud island, was a strong redoubt called fort Mercer, well provided with heavy artillery. Both these forts were still occupied by the Americans, and obstructions had been sunk in the channel between them, consisting of heavy beams fastened together, and pointed with iron. At Billingsport, further down the river, other obstructions had been sunk; and extensive, though unfinished works erected on the banks. These obstructions were further defended by several galleys, mounting heavy cannon, two floating batteries, and a number of armed vessels, and effectually prevented the British ships from coming up to the town.

Washington's army having been reinforced, and amounting now to 11,000 men, he left Pottsgrove and approached nearer Philadelphia. Lord Cornwallis was in the city with four regiments of grenadiers. The rest of the British troops were encamped at Germantown, on the great road to the north, and seven miles nearer the American army. Two or three regiments had been sent to Chester, to escort a convoy of provisions; and Washington observing the scattered situation of the enemy, seized this opportunity to attack their camp at Germantown.

After marching all night, a column under Sullivan reached Germantown about sunrise, and immediately attacked the left wing of the enemy.

Oct. 4 About half an hour after, another column under Greene, reached the ground and attacked the enemy's right. Both divisions were at first successful. But two other attacks, which were to have been made on the flanks and rear of the two wings, failed entirely; and the British having recovered from their first surprise, gave the troops in front a warm reception. The morning was extremely dark, and the battle ground abounded with strong inclo-

tures, which everywhere broke the line of the advancing troops. The regiments were separated; some were stopped early; others penetrated far into the town. The British took advantage of this confusion, and pressing hard upon the assailants, took many prisoners and compelled the Americans to retreat.

This attack was very well planned, and at first promised to be successful. But these hopes were entirely frustrated by the darkness of the morning, the nature of the ground, and the want of discipline and order among the troops. The British loss was 500; that of the Americans near 1200. Of these, 400 were taken prisoners. General Nash of North Carolina, was among the slain.

The attention of both armies was now turned to the posts on the river. Washington threw reinforcements into forts Mifflin and Mercer; and the British fleet having arrived in the Delaware, every exertion was made by the enemy to remove the obstructions which opposed their passage up the stream. The works at Billingsport which were guarded only by militia, had been taken and destroyed; and after much labor, the channel opposite those works was cleared. Batteries had been erected, which played upon forts Mifflin and Mercer, and preparations were made for a combined attack by land and water. Count Donop with 1200 men, crossed the Delaware at Philadelphia, and marched down the river to attack Red Bank. At the same time, several vessels came up the river, as far as the remaining obstructions would permit, and commenced a furious cannonade on fort Mifflin. Red Bank had a garrison of 500 men, commanded by colonel Green. Green abandoned his outworks on the approach of the enemy, and retired into the principal redoubt. Donop then  
Oct. 22 attempted an assault; but he was received with a terrible fire of musketry and grape shot, and fell mortally wounded. The assailants retreated, and favored by the darkness of the night, escaped into Philadelphia. They lost four hundred in the assault; the loss of the garrison was only thirtytwo. Of the ships which attacked fort Mifflin, the *Augusta* sixtyfour, blew up, the *Merlin* was burnt, and the others retired without effecting anything.

Howe had drawn his army into Philadelphia, and Wash-

ington had approached within fifteen miles of the city. New supplies were thrown into the forts ; and every means that could be devised, provided for their defence. The British had possession of Province island, which was separated from Mud island only by a narrow channel ; and here they erected extensive batteries which kept up a continual fire upon fort Mifflin. The garrison made a most gallant defence ; and labored every night to repair the breaches made during the day. But this could not last long ; the continual fire of the hostile batteries swept away their defences ; the enemy's ships had approached within one hundred yards of the fort ; and the place was pronounced no longer tenable. The garrison was accordingly withdrawn ; Red Bank was evacuated ; and the British having removed the obstructions in the river, succeeded at last in opening a communication between their army and their fleet.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

Affairs of the Northern department. — Naval engagement on Lake Champlain. — Burgoyne invests Ticonderoga. — Ticonderoga evacuated. — Action at Hubbardton. — Fort Anne evacuated. — St Leger invests fort Schuyler. — Defeats Herkimer. — Battle of Bennington. — Siege of fort Schuyler raised. — First battle of Stillwater. — Second battle of Stillwater. — Retreat of Burgoyne. — His army capitulates. — Posts at the highlands taken by the British. — They evacuate the forts on lake Champlain. — Washington is reinforced. — He goes into winter quarters at Valley Forge.

IN the meantime, events of great importance had taken place further to the north. We have already related, that early in June, 1776, the northern army had been compelled to evacuate Canada. The Americans retired to Ticonderoga ; and general Carlton, the British commander, who was at Montreal in great force, threatened to invade the states by the way of lake Champlain.

The lake was commanded by an American flotilla of sixteen vessels, very various in kind and size, which had

been equipped with great pains and expense, and entrusted to the care of general Arnold. At the beginning of the summer, the British general had not a single vessel on the lake ; but by incessant diligence, in little more than three months, he equipped five vessels, each stronger than the best armed ship of the American flotilla, twenty smaller ships, and a number of armed boats. The materials for the larger vessels were transported a great distance over land ; the smaller ones were obtained at Montreal, and had been dragged by main force through the Sorel, and over the rapids of St Terese and St John. This formidable fleet, navigated by 700 prime seamen, under the command of an experienced naval officer, was no sooner equipped, than it immediately proceeded in quest of Arnold.

Not discouraged by the inferiority of his force, the American commander had chosen an advantageous position between an island and the main land, where the channel was too narrow for all the British vessels to act at once ; and here he awaited the attack of the enemy. The engagement took place on the 11th of October ; it lasted several hours and was kept up with great spirit on both sides. But it was impossible to resist the superior force of the British. One of the American vessels was burned and another sunk ; and at night Arnold sailed off, in hopes to reach Ticonderoga, and to find a shelter under the guns of the fort. But the next day, he was overtaken by the British fleet, and brought to action near Crown Point. This engagement lasted about two hours ; and in the meanwhile, the vessels farthest ahead, pushed on and reached Ticonderoga. Arnold was unable to continue the action with those that remained ; but determined not to fall into the hands of the enemy, he ran his ships on shore and set them on fire. The Americans lost eleven vessels ; the British had one blown up, and two sunk. About one hundred men were lost on either side. The destruction of the American fleet leaving the passage open, general Carlton advanced down the lake as far as Ticonderoga. This fortress was held by an army of more than 8000 men, under generals Gates and Schuyler. The season was late ; and the British commander did not judge it prudent to attack the place. Accordingly he returned to Canada, and placed his troops



in winter quarters. Soon after the retreat of Carlton, the northern army was almost entirely dissolved. It had been enlisted only for one year, and that year had now expired. Several regiments which still continued in the service, marched under Gates to join Washington, who was at this time hard pressed on the Delaware; and Ticonderoga and the other forts were held by very slender garrisons. Thus stood affairs in the north at the end of the year 1776.

The British cabinet had resolved that the war in this quarter should be prosecuted with great vigor.

1777 General Burgoyne, who had been sent from England with additional troops, and had superseded Carlton in the command of the northern army, was to descend the lakes at the head of 10,000 men. He was to march upon Albany; carry the American posts at the highlands; form a junction with the forces in New York; and thus cut off the communication between New England and the middle states.

The season was considerably advanced before the British army was ready to move; but on the 1st of July Burgoyne appeared before Ticonderoga. General Schuyler, who commanded in the Northern department, had made the greatest exertions to prepare for his reception; but the same causes which weakened Washington's army, weakened his. The enlistments had proceeded slowly, and the supplies of arms, clothing and provisions, were very scanty.

In a few days the British had completely invested Ticonderoga; and general St Clair, the commanding officer, saw no chance of saving the garrison, which amounted to about 3000 men, except by speedily abandoning

July 6 the fort. The baggage and stores were put on board batteaux, and despatched up South river to Skenesborough,\* under convoy of five armed galleys, the remains of the American flotilla. The garrison marched by land for the same place. A rapid pursuit immediately commenced. A number of British gun-boats overtook and engaged the galleys; and Skenesborough having been attacked by three British regiments before the arrival of St Clair's troops, the garrison set the works on fire, and re-

\* Now Whitehall.

tired to fort Anne.\* All the baggage of the army, and a great quantity of provisions and military stores, were destroyed, or fell into the hands of the enemy.

St Clair knew the inferiority of his numbers, and that nothing but rapid marching could save him. He arrived at Castleton, thirty miles from Ticonderoga, the night after the evacuation of the fort. The rear, consisting of about 1200 men, under colonel Warner, halted at Hubberton, six miles short of that place. The next morning War-

ner was overtaken and attacked by a British division under general Frazer. At first his troops made a stout resistance; but general Reidesel coming up with his division of Germans, the Americans gave way and fled in every direction. Two hundred were killed, and six hundred wounded, two hundred of whom were taken prisoners; and the division was so entirely dispersed, that when Warner joined St Clair two days afterward, he had with him less than one hundred men.

Having heard of the loss of Skenesborough, St Clair now retreated upon Rutland; and at length joined Schuyler at fort Edward, on the Hudson. The troops which had retired from Skenesborough had been ordered to defend fort Anne; but as soon as it was attacked, colonel Long, the commandant, had set fire to the works and retreated to fort Edward,† where all the American forces were now concentrated. Burgoyne halted awhile at Skenesborough to collect and refresh his troops; his stores and artillery were brought up; and preparations were made for marching upon Albany.

The country between Skenesborough and fort Edward was, at this time, almost entirely unsettled. It was covered with thick wood; its surface was extremely rough; and it was everywhere intersected by creeks and morasses. While Burgoyne waited at Skenesborough, Schuyler improved every moment in breaking up bridges and rendering the roads impassable. Trees were cut in immense numbers so as to fall in layers across the roads, their boughs interlocking; and the intervening country was swept clear of

\* Fort Anne was at the head of the boat navigation on Wood Creek, a tributary of the South River, which is the name given to the southern extremity of Lake Champlain.

† Near the present situation of Sandy Hill.

cattle and provisions. Reinforcements of regular troops were strongly solicited; and the militia of New England and New York were called upon to give their aid at this alarming crisis. The progress of Burgoyne, so rapid and unexpected, had spread everywhere the greatest alarm; and strenuous exertions were made to reinforce the Northern army. General Lincoln was ordered to march at the head of the New England militia; Arnold, whose daring bravery had always been so conspicuous, was sent to reanimate the troops; and Morgan, with his famous rifle corps, was detached by Washington to the assistance of Schuyler.

The advance from Skenesborough cost the British army infinite labor and fatigue. But at length they  
July 30 forced their way to fort Edward; and as Schuyler, with all his exertions, had collected only about 4400 men, he was unable to maintain that place against them. He retired across the Hudson to Saratoga, and from thence to Stillwater, a short distance above the mouth of the Mohawk.

In the meantime, colonel St Leger, with about 1100 men, consisting of Canadians, a few regulars, and a large body of Indians, had proceeded from Montreal up the St Lawrence to lake Erie. He coasted along the lake, landed his men at Oswego, and having marched across the country, — then a complete wilderness, — laid siege to fort Schuyler near the head of the Mohawk. His design was, after taking that fort, to press forward and join the army under Burgoyne. General Herkimer assembled the militia of Tryon county, and attempted to raise the siege. But he fell into  
Aug. 6 an ambuscade, and was defeated with a loss of more than 400 men.

When the news that this fort was besieged reached the American camp, Schuyler sent three regiments under the command of Arnold to raise the siege; and then withdrew the rest of his army, which was much weakened by this detachment, into the islands at the confluence of the Hudson and Mohawk — a station which he judged more defensible than the camp at Stillwater. Burgoyne, meanwhile, was busily employed in transporting boats, stores and provisions from lake George to the Hudson. The distance was only eighteen miles; but the roads were so extremely bad, and it was so difficult to obtain a sufficient number of horses and

oxen, that by the 15th of August, he had brought over only twelve batteaux, and provisions for the army for four days in advance. Though desirous of advancing with all expedition upon Albany, Burgoyne was unwilling to move with so small a stock of provisions. The transportation from lake George was tedious and slow; and some new means must be devised of increasing his store. The Americans had a large depot of corn, cattle and carriages at Bennington, a town of the New Hampshire grants,\* about twentyfour miles east of the Hudson. These stores were guarded by a body of militia, varying in numbers from day to day; and if he could succeed in seizing them, the march to Albany might be immediately commenced.

Colonel Baum, with 600 men, principally Germans, was sent on this service. It happened that general Stark, with the New Hampshire militia, had just arrived at Bennington; and his troops, joined to those on duty there, made a body of 1600 men. When Baum approached the town, and learned the superiority of the Americans, he immediately began to entrench himself, and sent back for reinforcements. Colonel Breyman, with 500 Germans, was ordered to his support. But before this reinforcement could

Aug. 16 come up, Baum was attacked in his entrenchments, and totally routed. Breyman arrived soon after, and the battle was renewed; but when night came on, he abandoned his artillery and baggage, and escaped under cover of the darkness. Besides the men who were killed in the action, the Americans took near 600 prisoners. A thousand stand of arms and 900 swords, the spoils of the field, furnished a seasonable supply for the militia, who were now coming in from all quarters.

About the same time, St Leger abandoned the siege of fort Schuyler, and returned to Montreal. On the approach of Arnold he retired with great precipitation; his tents were left standing, and a large part of his baggage and stores fell into the hands of the Americans. These successes revived the spirits of the people; and a universal indignation was excited by the barbarities perpetrated by the Indians, who attended the armies of St Leger and Burgoyne. The militia assembled in great numbers; and the regular troops which

\* Now Vermont.

had been ordered to join the northern army, had now arrived. Schuyler, notwithstanding his great merits and unremitting exertions, had fallen under the displeasure of Congress, and being very unpopular among the eastern troops, he was superseded, and the chief command of the northern army was transferred to general Gates.

Burgoyne still persevered in his design upon Albany, and having with the greatest labor collected provisions for thirty days in advance, he threw a bridge of boats over the Hudson, and crossing that river, took post at Saratoga. Gates left his camp in the islands, and marched up the river as far as Stillwater; while the British, having repaired the roads and bridges between the two armies, advanced slowly down the river. On the 19th of September, they attacked the right wing of the Americans, and a sharp action ensued, which lasted four hours. The battle began in a skirmish between two advanced parties; but as the engagement grew warmer, reinforcements were sent out from either army, till the action became quite general. At dark the Americans retired to their camp. The British slept on their arms; but the next morning they did not renew the action. They had lost over 600 men, while the loss of the Americans did not much exceed 300. Finding himself unable to force the American camp, Burgoyne began to entrench his army. His difficulties increased every moment. The Indians and Canadians deserted in great numbers; provisions grew scarce; his forage was exhausted, and his horses were perishing for want of food. On the other hand, the army of Gates was continually increasing. The battle of Stillwater was celebrated as a great victory, and the harvest being over, the militia willingly assembled to complete the overthrow of their formidable adversary.

The armies lay facing each other till the 7th of October, when Burgoyne, who suffered severely for want of provisions, resolved to try the event of another battle. With this design, he drew out 1500 men with six field pieces, and threatened an attack on the American left. Gates no sooner perceived this movement, than he resolved to assault the left of the British. The attack was made with great spirit, and soon extended along the whole line. Arnold rushed upon the British right with the greatest gallantry; and pressing hard upon it, captured the artillery, and drove the troops

into their camp. The Americans followed close in the rear, and under a tremendous fire of musketry and grape, assaulted the works throughout their whole extent. Towards night, Arnold forced the entrenchments, and entered the works, followed by a few of his men; but his horse was killed under him, and his party was soon forced back. Further to the right, colonel Brooks was more successful. At the head of Jackson's regiment of Massachusetts, he stormed the entrenchments; killed colonel Breyman, who commanded in that part of the line; and at night, remained in possession of the ground he had gained. Besides killing many of the enemy, and among the rest general Frazer, one of their best officers, the Americans had taken 200 prisoners. They had also captured nine pieces of artillery, and the encampment of a German brigade, with all its equipage. Their own loss was inconsiderable.

At night, Burgoyne drew off his army, and the next day continued his retreat to Saratoga. He left behind him his hospital, with about 300 sick; and during his retreat, several batteaux laden with baggage fell into the hands of the Americans. Having arrived at Saratoga, he sent forward a company of artificers, under a strong escort, to repair the roads and bridges towards fort Edward. But they found the heights occupied, and the roads guarded by American troops;  
Oct. 10 and were obliged to fall back on the main body.

The British were now nearly surrounded; only three days' provision, even on short allowance, remained in store; the troops were discouraged and fatigued; and were watched by a hostile army far superior in numbers. Several plans were proposed for a rapid retreat, but they all proved impracticable; and Burgoyne was reduced to the necessity of capitulating. The terms he obtained were very favorable. His troops were to march out of their camp with the honors of war, and having laid down their arms, were to  
Oct. 16 be sent to England, under condition of not serving against the United States, till exchanged. Their baggage, arms, artillery, and camp equipage became the property of the conquerors.

The successes of the British on the Hudson contributed, it is likely, to the favorableness of these terms. Sir Henry Clinton, with 3000 men, had sailed up that river; taken forts Montgomery, Clinton, Constitution and Independence,

by which the Highlands were guarded; destroyed a great quantity of stores, and advanced north as far as Esopus. The British, however, in the present state of their affairs, were unable to hold these conquests, and having destroyed everything they could, they returned to New York.

After the surrender of Burgoyne, the British gave up all hopes of holding the forts on Lake Champlain. Accordingly they set fire to the works and buildings, and having destroyed such stores as they could not remove, retired hastily to Canada. The militia of the northern army returned to their homes. Several of the continental regiments were detained at Albany, and the rest marched off to join Washington, who was then lying before Philadelphia. But these reinforcements did not reach him, till the British had gained the command of the Delaware, and opened a communication between their army and their ships.

Washington remained for some time encamped at White Marsh; but at length he retired into winter quarters at Valley Forge. This was a piece of high and strong ground on the south side of the Schuylkill, about twenty-five miles from Philadelphia. Log huts were built to shelter the soldiers; but in every other respect the forms of a regular encampment were preserved. This method of passing the winter was chosen, as the only one which could secure the neighboring country from the inroads of the enemy, and at the same time protect the army from the danger of being cut off by detachments. From Valley Forge, on both sides, round to the Delaware, bodies of troops and parties of militia were stationed at different places, in such a manner as to cut off the communication between Philadelphia and the country.

## CHAPTER XII.

Retrospect. — The States. — Congress. — The Confederation. — Paper Money. — The Loyalists. — Indian affairs. — Story of Miss M'Crea. — Treatment of prisoners. — Maritime exertions. — Wants and sufferings of the army. — Combination against general Washington. — Alliance with France. — Lord North's attempt at reconciliation.

It is now time to glance backward, and take a cursory view of some important and interesting particulars, which the detail of military events has hitherto prevented us from noticing.

As soon as the breaking out of the war had put an end to the authority of the royal government, the several colonies became each an independent state, and exercised, each for itself, all the attributes of sovereignty. Congress, though looked up to as the head of the American states, had in fact, no solid authority. It had only a recommendatory power. It could call on the several states for their quotas of men and money; but the whole matter was to be discussed over again in the state assemblies; and it depended on them whether the requisitions should be complied with or not. After much debate, Congress agreed (Nov. 15th, 1777) upon certain *Articles of confederation*, by which the several states entered into a firm and perpetual league, for mutual defence, and the promotion of the general welfare. By these articles, the power of peace and war, of forming treaties, of sending and receiving ambassadors, of establishing admiralty courts, and some others were vested in congress. But the original defect remained. According to these articles, congress could only recommend; it had no power conferred upon it to enforce what it recommended.

The articles of confederation were afterwards ratified by the states, and were for several years the only bond of union between them. While the war lasted, this confederation, imperfect as it was, answered tolerably well; though already its defects began to appear. At first, the requisitions of congress were received with enthusiasm, and obeyed with alacrity; but as the first ardor died away,



when the war became more pressing, and the requisitions more frequent, they were heard with reluctance, and in many of the states, but partially and scantily complied with.

The war could not be carried on without money ; but it was some time before congress ventured upon laying a tax. They found a resource in issuing bills of credit,—a practice which had been frequent in the colonies before the revolution,—for which they pledged the faith of the states, and which, at first had equal currency with gold and silver. The states in their individual capacity, each exercised this same prerogative of issuing bills of credit ; and in a short time, the quantity of paper money in circulation became very great. An alarming depreciation was the consequence ; and notwithstanding all the laws that were passed, branding as enemies to their country, all who refused to receive the paper as of equal value with gold and silver, the depreciation still continued. Various means were proposed and resorted to for curing this evil. The only effectual remedy was, to diminish the issue of paper money. But the application of this remedy produced an alarming deficiency in the public treasury. To supply the deficit, thus created, loan offices were opened, and several millions were borrowed on the credit of the United States. Taxes were afterward imposed ; but they were paid slowly and reluctantly ; and new issues of paper money still continued the great resource for carrying on the war.

Some revenue was derived from the sale of confiscated estates. In all the colonies there were numbers who still remained attached to Great Britain, and wholly averse to the war of independence. Many of them left the country of their own accord ; others were banished, and their estates confiscated and sold. In New England, Virginia and South Carolina, the people were firmly united in support of the war, and the number of disaffected was very small. But in the middle states and in North Carolina, the number of those opposed to the war was so great, as on many occasions completely to paralyze the exertions of the state governments ; and insurrections occasionally took place, which were only suppressed by force of arms.

Besides the enemies in their own bosom, and the armies sent from abroad, the states had another dangerous foe to

encounter. When the war with Great Britain began, great pains were taken to secure and preserve the neutrality of the Indians. The tribes chiefly to be dreaded, were the Six Nations in New York and Pennsylvania, and the Creeks and Cherokees in Georgia and the Carolinas. General Schuyler possessed great influence among the Six Nations, and by his exertions a treaty was made with them. But the influence of Sir John Johnson, the British agent, was still greater than Schuyler's; and when Burgoyne invaded New York, the Six Nations were easily persuaded to join his army, and while with him, were guilty of such outrages as raised the indignation of the whole country. The murder of Miss M'Crea formed an affecting story, of which great use was made to inflame the people, and excite them to the utmost efforts against Burgoyne. Miss M'Crea's family were loyalists, and she herself was engaged to marry a loyalist officer, who held at this very time, a commission in the British army. She was dressed to receive her lover, and was waiting with fond expectation; when a party of Indians burst into the house, carried off the whole family into the woods, and murdered, scalped and mangled them, in a most horrid manner.

The Creeks and Cherokees were easily stimulated by the persuasions and presents of British agents to fall on the settlements in their neighborhood. About the time that Charleston was bombarded by Sir Peter Parker, the Cherokees attacked the back settlements of Virginia and Carolinas. But several regular regiments having been sent against them, and the backwoodsmen embodying for their own defence, the Indians were at length subdued. From time to time, during the war, they renewed their hostilities; but they were uniformly defeated and compelled to sue for peace.

The peculiar nature of the revolutionary war gave rise to some difficulties respecting the exchange of prisoners. At first, the British officers inclined to consider the Americans as merely rebels, not entitled to the usual courtesies of war. The prisoners who fell into their hands were treated with great severity. They were confined in common jails like felons or state criminals. Washington remonstrated against this conduct, and when remonstrances had no effect, ordered it to be retaliated on the British prisoners. Both sides

were soon tired of this useless severity, and at length an exchange of prisoners was agreed on. But those Americans who remained in the hands of the British, still complained of harsh treatment; new difficulties arose, and the subject continued through the whole war, a matter of much perplexity, and a source of continual trouble and disquiet.

While every effort was made to carry on the war by land, maritime affairs were not entirely neglected. As early as the 13th of December, 1775, Congress resolved to equip thirteen armed vessels, each to carry from thirtytwo to twentyfour guns. This was the foundation of the American navy. Great numbers of privateers were fitted out in the ports of New England, which cruised against the British commerce with the greatest success. Not only was the country, at the beginning of the war, very ill provided with ammunition and military stores, but the effect of the non-importation agreements, by which the war had been preceded, was severely felt in a way which had not been anticipated. These agreements had been entered into with the best intentions, and their immediate operation was no doubt beneficial; but their ultimate effect was, to leave the country at the beginning of the war, extremely destitute of cloths, blankets, and other manufactured articles. The want of these commodities, though greatest in the army, extended to the citizens in general, and was very severely felt. But a great resource was found in the captures made at sea. The prizes taken by the American cruisers during the year 1776, were valued at five millions of dollars, and the supplies thus furnished to the army and the country, were of the greatest importance.

Yet notwithstanding these supplies, and the untiring exertions of Congress to equip and clothe the army, the state of the troops was wretched in the extreme. They made long marches through ice and snow, barefoot and half naked; while the inferiority of their arms gave the enemy a great advantage in every encounter. Nothing but the firm prudence and indomitable spirit of Washington, joined to uncommon fortitude and courage on the part of the men, had enabled the American army to keep the field during two campaigns against a superior British force; and in the midst of complicated sufferings, to fight so many battles, if not always with brilliant success, yet without sustaining any in-

curable defeat. But what the American troops suffered in the field, fell far short of the miseries they endured at their winter quarters. And no martial achievements can, for a moment, be compared with the noble and devoted patriotism that kept them together, and carried them through the gloomy winter they spent at Valley Forge.

On more than one occasion there was an absolute famine in the camp. The commissary department failed entirely; and Washington could subsist his army only by seizing the corn and provisions of the surrounding farmers. He did not resort to this harsh measure without the greatest reluctance; but Congress declared they could give him no assistance; the army must be subsisted; and this was his only resource. Nakedness was added to famine. The want of shoes, stockings, and other necessary clothing, rendered a large part of the army unfit for duty; and blankets were a luxury which very few enjoyed. Cold and improper food brought on a great degree of sickness; but the hospitals were so ill furnished, that of those who entered them, many died and few recovered. Washington left no means untried; he addressed Congress; he addressed the states; he painted in vivid colors the extremity of distress to which his army was reduced. His representations were not without effect. Great exertions were made to relieve the soldiers, and the object, at last, was in a good measure accomplished.

While Washington was straining every nerve to keep the army together, a combination was secretly formed to remove him from the chief command. This combination consisted of several members of Congress, and a few officers in the army,—among others, Gates, Mifflin and Conway; but its history has been kept in the back-ground, and is rather obscure. Many slanderous reports were spread against the character of Washington, and some complaints were exhibited against him in Congress. But the confidence which the army and the people reposed in the commander in chief, was too strong to be shaken. The idea of depriving him of command was everywhere received with indignation; and the conspiracy soon sunk into merited obscurity.

Meanwhile, the firm resistance of the states, and especially the splendid achievement of capturing a whole British army, began to produce an effect in Europe. Soon after the declaration of Independence, Congress had sent Dr

Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee, commissioners to France, in the hope of obtaining some assistance from that powerful state. France and England had long been enemies; and each had watched and improved every opportunity of humbling the other. The king of France observed with pleasure the resistance of the colonies; but his finances were in a state of much disorder, and he was unwilling to involve himself in the war, while its event was yet doubtful. Supplies were secretly furnished to a considerable amount; and the commissioners, though publicly discountenanced, were privately encouraged. Their prospects varied from time to time, according to the complexion of American affairs. But the vigor displayed in the capture of Burgoyne, fixed the hesitating politics of the French court. On the 6th February, 1778, Louis XVI. acknowledged the independence of the United States, and formed with them treaties of commerce and alliance. These treaties were the signal of a war between France and England. They reached America in May, where they were received with enthusiastic delight, and immediately ratified. In the course of the summer, M. Gerard arrived in the United States, as minister plenipotentiary from the French king; and in September, Congress appointed Benjamin Franklin, minister to the court of France.

It was not in France only that the success of the American arms was felt. Lord North, the British minister, began to fear that it would not be possible to drive the colonies into submission. Accordingly, he introduced into parliament a plan of reconciliation. Commissioners with ample powers were appointed; and terms were offered, such as would have been most gladly accepted at the beginning of the war. But the progress of the contest had exasperated the spirits, and raised the demands of the Americans. Nothing would now satisfy them but an acknowledgment of their independence. The commissioners left no stone unturned; they even went so far as to attempt bribing members of Congress. Ten thousand pounds, and the best office in America in the gift of the crown, were offered to Mr Reed, a member from Pennsylvania, if he would bring about a reconciliation. His answer is worthy of being recorded. 'I am not worth purchasing,' he said, 'but such as I am, the king of England is not rich enough to buy me.'

## CHAPTER XIII.

The British evacuate Philadelphia. — A French fleet arrives. — Battle of Rhode Island. — Skirmishes. — Destruction of Wyoming. — Theatre of war transferred to the South. — Savannah taken by the British. — Georgia submits. — Lincoln takes command of the Southern army. — Insurrection of the Loyalists. — Engagement at Briar's Creek. — Charleston besieged. — Engagement at Stono Ferry. — Affairs of the North. — Sullivan's expedition against the Six Nations. — Arrival of a French fleet. — Siege of Savannah. — Spain takes part in the war.

THE spring of 1778, found the British army still occupying Philadelphia, and Washington encamped at 1778 Valley Forge. There were occasional skirmishes between detached parties; but no movements of much consequence took place, till Sir William Howe resigned his command. It was expected that France would now take an active part in the war, and Philadelphia was regarded as an unsafe station for the British army. Accordingly, Sir Henry Clinton, the successor of Howe, received orders to evacuate that city, and to concentrate his forces at New York.

Clinton left Philadelphia on the 18th of June; and having crossed the Delaware, he continued his march through the Jerseys, taking the lower road, towards Sandy Hook, where he had determined to embark his army. The British had no sooner left Philadelphia than Washington commenced a pursuit. He came up with the enemy not far from Monmouth court-house, where a severe but indecisive action took place. The American troops slept on their arms, expecting to renew the attack the next morning. But at midnight, the British marched off in perfect silence, and soon reached the high ground about Middleton, where it was impossible to attack them with any prospect of success. The American loss in the battle of Monmouth was 230; that of the British 358. During the march through the Jerseys, 100 of the enemy were taken prisoners, and near 1000 deserted. These deserters were principally Germans, who had married in Philadelphia, and learned to prefer the sweets of matrimony, to the toils of war. Having reached Sandy Hook, Clinton transported his army, by water, to New York. Washington continued his march towards the Hudson.

In the meantime, the count D'Estaing arrived off the coast of Virginia, with a French fleet, consisting of twenty ships of the line and six frigates, having on board 4000 soldiers. After considerable delay, and frequent consultations between Washington and the French admiral, an attack on Rhode island \* was finally agreed upon. This island had been in possession of the British ever since the American army evacuated New York. It proved a convenient station for harassing the neighboring continent, and obtaining supplies for the British garrison in that city. The troops on the island had lately been reinforced, and now amounted to 6000 men, under the command of general Pigott. These troops lay principally at Newport. As it was necessary to make a combined attack by sea and land, several continental regiments were detached for this service; the New England states were called on for their quotas of militia; and an army of 10,000 men, under the command of general Sullivan, was assembled at Providence. D'Estaing had arrived before Newport, and a plan of attack was concerted Aug. 9 between him and Sullivan. The army embarked, and had landed on the northern end of the island, when Lord Howe, with a British fleet, appeared in sight. D'Estaing immediately weighed anchor, and put to sea with the purpose of bringing on a naval engagement. Both fleets were soon out of sight. After manœuvring two days without coming to action, they were separated by a violent storm. D'Estaing returned to Newport, but much to the disappointment of Sullivan, who had before had some misunderstanding with the admiral on points of etiquette, he soon after sailed for Boston, — compelled to do so, as he asserted, by the necessity of refitting his ships.

Sullivan had already formed the siege of Newport; but the militia were discouraged by the departure of the fleet, and deserted in such numbers that the army was soon reduced to 5000 men. It was now necessary to raise the siege. On the night of the 26th, the troops left their works before Newport, and retired silently towards the northern end of the island. They were pursued by the British and attacked the next morning, when a sharp contest ensued.

\* Not the state, but the island in Narraganset bay, from which the state derives its name.

The Americans kept their ground, and the next day the enemy showed no disposition to renew the attack. They had lost 260 men ; the American loss was 211. The British waited for a reinforcement, which they expected from New

York ; but the day before it arrived, Sullivan Aug. 31 passed over with such secrecy and expedition to the main land, that the island was wholly evacuated before the enemy had any suspicions of his movements.

The rest of the summer passed without any important operations. One or two American detachments were surprised and cut to pieces. The British plundered New Bedford, Fair Haven and Little Egg Harbor ; but these marauding expeditions, however severe upon the individual sufferers, had no public results.

Meanwhile an Indian war raged on the frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia, attended with all and more than all its usual atrocities. The scene of the greatest desolation was Wyoming, a tract of country on both sides of the Susquehanna, which had been settled by emigrants from Connecticut, and contained at this time over a thousand families. The people of Wyoming entered zealously into the war of independence, and are said to have furnished a thousand soldiers for the continental army. Still, there were some among them disinclined to the cause. These disaffected persons, complained of the severities, which, as they said, were exercised against the loyalists, and fled for refuge to the neighboring tribes of the Six Nations. Their number gradually increased ; and inflamed with all the fury of civil discord, they formed the design of attacking the settlement, and cutting off the inhabitants. On the 1st of July, a body of 1600 men, partly Indians and partly refugee loyalists, broke into Wyoming. The inhabitants had taken the alarm and retired into their forts. The chief force of the colony, to the number of 400 men, had assembled in Kingston, their principal town. They were induced to march out, under pretence of a parley ; and having been enticed to a distance, they were surrounded, attacked, and put to the sword. The forts were then besieged and taken. The men were cut to pieces ; and the women, and children perished amid the flames of their blazing houses. The whole settlement was ravaged and laid waste ; the fruit trees even, were rooted



up; the cattle were killed, and every living thing destroyed. All was ruined, except the plantation of the loyalists, which rose like islands in the midst of surrounding desolation.

Not satisfied with his success in the northern states, the British general now resolved to try his fortune further south. During the remainder of the war, the southern states were the principal theatre of action; and the fate of immense and fertile regions was decided by armies consisting of only a few regiments, and by engagements, which in the annals of European warfare, would scarcely be deemed worthy of a place in history. It ought always, however to be recollected that the importance of events depends not so much on their absolute magnitude, as on the consequences they involve, and the vigor and spirit they display. Viewed in this light, the incidents of the southern campaigns are worthy of very particular attention.

Towards the end of the year, colonel Campbell, with an army of 2000 men sailed from New York, and landed on the coast of Georgia. General Howe commanded at Savannah; but his whole army consisted of only 600 continentals and as many militia. He posted his forces before the town, with one wing resting on the river Savannah, and with a deep morass in his front. This morass he supposed impassable except by a single road; but Campbell was informed by a negro of a private path, and having thrown a body of men into the rear of Howe's army, he attacked his front at the same time, and totally  
Dec. 29 routed him. In consequence of this victory, Savannah with 450 soldiers, the forts, artillery, the shipping in the river, and a large quantity of provisions, fell into the hands of the enemy. In the meantime, general Prevost, who commanded the British forces in Florida, had invaded the southern part of Georgia. He took the fort at Sunbury, and marched on to Savannah, where he united his troops to those of colonel Campbell, and assumed the chief command. Campbell was sent against Augusta, which surrendered without resistance. In a short time the whole of Georgia had submitted to the British, and they began to meditate the invasion of South Carolina.

In the meantime, general Lincoln had been ordered to

take the command of the southern army. He repaired to Charleston, where he found the military affairs in a condition of total derangement. But the state authorities of Carolina

made great exertions to assist him, and he was  
 1779 soon able to take the field with an army of 3600 men. Lincoln resolved to confine himself to a de-

fensive warfare; and with this design he stationed his forces along the northern bank of the Savannah. This river forms an excellent line of defence. Its channel is narrow; but for a great distance it flows through a marshy country, which is often overflowed to the width of three or four miles, and is only crossed by a few narrow causeways, which are often wholly impassable for an army. Not daring to attempt the passage of the Savannah, Prevost endeavored to penetrate into South Carolina by way of the sea coast. A detachment was sent to get possession of Port Royal; but they were attacked by general Moultrie, and repulsed with considerable loss.

In the back settlements of the Carolinas, there had always been a large number of loyalists. Encouraged by the British successes in Georgia, they assembled in considerable numbers, and marched to join the British standard at Augusta. But they were attacked by a body of the neighboring militia, and totally defeated. Many were taken prisoners, and tried for treason. Seventy were found guilty, and condemned to die; but only five, the most notorious offenders, were actually executed.

Lincoln's army having received considerable reinforcements, he now resolved to resume the offensive, and ordered general Ash, with 1500 men, to cross the Savannah, and take post at Briar's creek. This station was thought to be

unassailable, but Prevost succeeded in gaining  
 March 3 Ash's rear; attacked him with great spirit; dispersed his troops; and took over 300 prisoners.

This victory, gave the British quiet possession of Georgia, and Prevost issued a proclamation re-establishing the ancient form of government.

South Carolina exerted itself to the utmost; and Lincoln's army being again reinforced, he marched towards Augusta, with the design of recovering the upper part of Georgia. Charleston was left with a very slender garrison, and Prevost improved this opportunity to cross the Savannah, with the design of laying siege to the capital of South Carolina. The

fortifications of Charleston were nearly all towards the sea; the land side was very insufficiently defended. But instead of pressing forward, at once, Prevost, after crossing the Savannah, delayed his march for two or three days, and during that interval, the most strenuous exertions were made to put the city in a defensible state. The British were not strong enough to carry the works by assault; and Lincoln, who had been apprised of the danger of Charleston, was marching to its relief. Unwilling to encounter him, Prevost drew his army into the island of St Johns, a few miles to the south of Charleston harbor, where he awaited the arrival of his ships.

The British still held a post at Stono ferry, on the main land, opposite the island of St Johns, and here June 20 they were attacked by Lincoln. But he was repulsed with a loss of near 200 men. The heat now became too oppressive for active service; and Prevost withdrew his troops through the islands to Savannah, while Lincoln took post near Beaufort.

The movements of the British armies further north, were rather excursions for plunder than military operations. Virginia was invaded by 2000 men, under general Matthews, who destroyed large quantities of stores at Portsmouth, Norfolk, and several other places, and May ravaged the country on the banks of the rivers. The coast of Connecticut was visited by a fleet and army, under general Tryon; and New Haven, Fairfield and Norwalk were plundered and burned.

In the meantime, the Americans were not wholly inactive. The British post at Stony Point, on the Hudson, was taken by storm, and 600 of the enemy killed or taken prisoners; and soon after, the post at Paulus Hook was surprised by major Lee, of the cavalry, thirty of the enemy killed, and 159 taken prisoners.

The Six Nations still continued their hostilities, and Sullivan was sent with a strong detachment to carry the war into the Indian country. He marched up the west branch of the Susquehanna, and having advanced a considerable distance into the Indian territory, he found the enemy, to the number of 1000 men, strongly posted, and defended by considerable entrenchments. They stood the attack of the American army for two hours; but at length fled in great

confusion. Sullivan advanced into the heart of their country, and laid it waste in every direction.

In the meantime, the count D'Estaing arrived from the West India, and appeared on the coast of Georgia, with a fleet of twentytwo ships of the line and eleven frigates, having on board 6000 troops. A vessel was sent to Charleston to inform Lincoln of his arrival, and a plan was concerted between them for laying siege to Savannah. A body of

French troops was landed; Lincoln marched with Sept. 23 his own forces; and the siege of the city was regularly formed. In a short time, the lines of the besiegers were far advanced, and a few days would have insured the surrender of the place. But D'Estaing was anxious to return to the West Indies; he declared that he could wait no longer, and that the siege must be raised, or else the town taken by storm. Lincoln, unwilling to lose the prey already in his grasp, resolved to attempt an assault. The attack was made in three columns, and the assailants succeeded in carrying a part of the works; but in

Oct. 9 the end, they were repulsed with great slaughter.

The loss of the garrison was only 55; but the besiegers lost 1000 men. Count Pulaski, a noble Pole, who early entered the American army, and served in it with zeal and courage, fell in this unfortunate assault. D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies; and Lincoln, with his shattered forces, returned to Charleston.

Some time previous to this attack on Savannah, the king of Spain had been persuaded by the French court to declare war against England. Spain, however, did not yet acknowledge the independence of the United States, nor enter into any treaty with them. There were some difficulties with respect to the boundaries of Louisiana and the navigation of the Mississippi; and in the hope of settling these difficulties, and of forming an alliance, Mr Jay was appointed minister to the Spanish court.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

Clinton's expedition against South Carolina.—Siege of Charleston.—Affair at Monk's corner.—Charleston capitulates.—Affair of the Washaws.—South Carolina submits.—Exploits of Sumpter.—Gates appointed to command the Southern army.—Battle of Camden.—Defeat of Sumpter.—Affairs of the North.—Treachery of Arnold.—Action of King's Mountain.—Greene takes command of the Southern army.—Battle of the Cowpens.—Greene's retreat through North Carolina.—Battle of Guilford.—Cornwallis retires to Wilmington.—Greene advances into South Carolina.—Battle of Hobkirk Hill.—British posts taken by Morgan.—Rawdon retires towards Charleston.—Siege of Ninety Six.—Battle of Eutaw.

SIR HENRY CLINTON, the British commander-in-chief, had remained in New York the whole summer; he had received large reinforcements from England, and had further strengthened his army by evacuating Rhode Island. He no sooner heard of the departure of D'Estaing, and the disasters of the allied army before Savannah, than he resolved to attempt the conquest of South Carolina. Clinton himself, with a large body of troops, sailed from New York under convoy of admiral Arbuthnot, and arrived at Savannah the last day in the year.

About the middle of February, he again re-embarked, and cautiously approached Charleston, through the islands along the sea coast. The city was not in a very defensible state, and Lincoln's army was small. Yet the place was regarded as of very great importance; and while Clinton delayed his approaches, every exertion was made to strengthen the fortifications and reinforce the garrison. At length the British vessels forced a passage over the bar; the army crossed Ashley river; and the siege was regularly formed. As yet there was an undisturbed communication between the town and the country north of Cooper's river; and a body of horse was stationed at Monk's corner to keep open this communication, and to cover Lincoln's retreat, should he find it necessary to abandon the town. But this detachment was surprised and defeated by colonel Tarleton, of the British cavalry; the country north of Cooper's river was occupied by the enemy; and the city of Charleston was

invested on all sides. The siege was carried regularly forward ; and it soon became apparent, that the place could not be defended. Fort Moultrie had been taken, and the garrison had been obliged to surrender prisoners of war ; the works of the besiegers approached within twenty yards of the American lines ; and preparations were evidently making for a general assault. Lincoln's army was worn out with constant duty, and was too small sufficiently to man the works. Rather than stand an assault, Lincoln consented to surrender the town. The forts, shipping, and all other public property passed into the hands of the enemy ; and the garrison to the number of 1500 continentals, and 500 militia, became prisoners of war.

This blow was very severely felt. Detachments of the British army were sent into various parts of South Carolina ; and colonel Beckford, who lay at the Washaws, with about 400 men, the last remaining fragment of the southern army, was attacked by Tarleton, and his regiments dispersed. All further resistance was hopeless ; and the whole state submitted to the British authority. It submitted in appearance ; but a large part of the population was only waiting for a good opportunity again to cast off the yoke of foreign dominion, and to reassert the right of independence. Soon after the submission of South Carolina, Clinton returned to New York, leaving lord Cornwallis with an army of 4000 men, to complete the conquest of the southern states. The heat of the season, and the difficulty of obtaining supplies, retarded all military operations ; but the British agents were busily employed in stirring up the loyalists, who were very numerous in North Carolina, and in preparing them to cooperate with the British army.

Meanwhile, a party of the more determined patriots, who had left their own state when the British became predominant there, and fled into North Carolina, assembled together to the number of 200, and chose colonel Sumpter, an old continental officer, for their commander. Sumpter entered South Carolina, and kept up a continual skirmishing with detached parties of the enemy. He attacked a party stationed at Williamson's plantation, with  
Aug 6 complete success ; and having increased his force to 600 men, he surprised and totally defeated a British regiment at Hanging Rock.

While this partizan warfare was kept up by Sumpter, measures were taken to form a new army for the defence of North Carolina. For this purpose, a body of troops was detached from the main army in New Jersey, under the command of the baron de Kalb, a German officer, who had early engaged in the service of the United States. The progress of these troops through North Carolina was extremely slow. The country was thinly inhabited; no magazines had been laid up; and provisions were obtained with great difficulty. The troops were reduced to the necessity of spreading over the country in small parties, to collect corn for their daily food; and in this way, they proceeded slowly towards Salisbury, where they were to be joined by the North Carolina militia.

In the meantime, general Gates had been appointed to the chief command of the Southern department. As soon as he had joined the army, he advanced and took post at Claremont; while the British forces under lord Rawdon, were concentrated at Camden. From Claremont, Gates marched on towards Camden, with the design of fighting Rawdon, or compelling him to abandon the upper country. His army consisted of 4000 men; but of these, only 900 were continentals. The British did not much exceed 2600 men; but they were all regular troops. Cornwallis had now joined the British army, and perceiving that he could preserve his conquests only by fighting a battle, he advanced from Camden to attack Gates, at the very time that Gates moved from Claremont towards Camden. The advanced parties met in the woods; and after some  
Aug. 14 skirmishing, the line of battle was formed on both sides. Gates' centre and left wing were composed entirely of militia; and when the British infantry rushed upon them with charged bayonets, they fled at once. The continentals on the right, fought with the greatest spirit; and though charged at the same time in front and flank, they still maintained their ground. They were several times broken; but they rallied as often, and fought intermingled with the enemy. At length Cornwallis charged them in flank with his dragoons; the infantry pressed them in front with the bayonet; and unable to resist this double attack, these gallant troops were thrown into disorder and compelled to fly. De Kalb, their

commander, fell under eleven wounds. He was taken prisoner, and treated with all humanity ; but he expired in a few hours. The continental regiments were closely pursued, and entirely dispersed. Every corps was broken ; the officers were separated from the men, and all who escaped the sword of the enemy, were scattered in small parties, or singly, through the woods. The baggage and artillery fell into the hands of the enemy ; and though the militia fled too soon to suffer much in the battle, they were separated and scattered, and not easily to be reassembled. The British had lost 325 men ; the American loss was never very accurately ascertained ; but it must have been four or five times as great.

Sumpter, who still continued at the head of his light corps, had taken a small fort on the Wateree, below Camden, where he had captured a large quantity of stores, and made 100 prisoners. When he heard of Gates' disaster, he attempted to retreat up the south side of the Wateree. But he was followed by a detachment under Aug 18 Tarlton ; surprised near the Catawba ford ; his force entirely dispersed ; the stores retaken and the prisoners liberated. The fragments of Gates' army retired to Charlotte in North Carolina, and thence to Salisbury.

Thus stood the affairs at the south. In the meantime, a French fleet, with 5000 troops on board, had arrived at Newport ; and sanguine hopes were entertained, that New York itself might be taken, by the combined efforts of the French and American forces. But the weakness of Washington's army, the poverty of Congress, and the tardiness of the states in furnishing their quotas of men and provisions ; — these causes, together with the arrival of admiral Rodney, with a powerful British fleet, which gave the enemy a great superiority at sea, prevented any operations of importance. So far from taking New York, the Americans were themselves in danger of losing their own posts on the Hudson.

When Philadelphia had been evacuated by the British, general Arnold was appointed to command in that city. His military talents, activity and courage had been extremely conspicuous ; but his wounds received at Quebec and Saratoga had, in some measure, disqualified him for active service. While at Philadelphia, he lived in great splendor, and though destitute of private fortune, his vanity and love of



show led him into profuse expense. He involved himself deeply in debt; and several speculations in which he engaged, with the hopes of retrieving his fortunes, proved unsuccessful. He had another resource, in large claims against the United States; but the commissioners to whom they were referred, reduced them considerably; and when Arnold appealed to Congress, a committee of that body reported, that the allowance of which he complained, was greater than he was entitled to receive. He was, besides, charged with various acts of extortion and speculation.

Soured by his misfortunes, he indulged himself in unwarrantable complaints against what he called the ingratitude of his country; and having rendered himself extremely obnoxious to the state of Pennsylvania, formal charges were exhibited against him. He was arrested; tried by a court martial; and sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. This was more than his proud and unprincipled spirit could endure; and from this time, he meditated revenge. He entered into a correspondence with the British general; and to facilitate and give importance to his treason, he sought and obtained the command of West Point. He was known as a brave and able officer; his patriotism was as yet undoubted; and Washington entrusted this important post to his care, without the least suspicion of the designs he was meditating.

Major André, a young man of great accomplishments, an aid of Sir Henry Clinton's, and adjutant general of the British army, was employed to carry on the intercourse between Clinton and Arnold. As André was returning from an interview with the American general, after he had passed all the regular posts and guards by means of a permit, he was arrested by three militia men, part of a scouting party employed between the country occupied by the British, and that held by the Americans. In the confusion of the moment, he supposed the men to belong to the British camp, and declared himself to be a British officer, travelling on business of the last importance. When he discovered his mistake, he offered his watch, his purse, any reward they would name, if they would permit him to pass on. But his offers were rejected; he was searched; suspicious papers were found concealed in his boots; and he was carried before colonel Jameson, the commanding officer on the lines.

Jameson suspected no treachery; and when André requested him to inform his commanding officer that *John Anderson* was taken, — this was the assumed name under which André travelled, — Jameson immediately despatched an express for that purpose. Arnold took the alarm, and escaped on board a British vessel then lying in the Hudson. André was tried as a spy, found guilty, and executed. Arnold received from the British government a reward of £10,000, and the rank of brigadier general.

None scarcely are so abandoned as willingly to confess they have been actuated by mean and guilty motives. Arnold published an address to the people of America, in which he attempted to varnish over his treason. He addressed a paper to the officers and soldiers of the army, in which he endeavored to corrupt them, by contrasting the beggary and wretchedness of their situation with the prompt pay of the British forces. He inveighed against the alliance with France; and accused Congress of being ready to sacrifice the good of their country, and the blood of their fellow-citizens, to promote their own private interest. But Arnold, late the pride of the army, was now known and detested as a *traitor*; his influence was gone; and his addresses were received with the contempt they merited. His machinations had no success, and he retained the singular honor of being the first and the only American officer, who betrayed his country's cause.

Notwithstanding the complete victory, which the British army had obtained at Camden, the heat of the weather, and the scarcity of supplies prevented Cornwallis from marching immediately into North Carolina. The main army of the Americans was too weak to attempt anything; but a vigorous partisan warfare was kept up by small bodies, under the command of Marion and Sumpter, who defeated several detachments that marched against them. And when Cornwallis sent major Furguson into the western counties of North Carolina to raise the loyalists, he was pursued by several bands of mounted riflemen, the hardy inhabitants of the western frontier, and entirely defeated in an action  
Oct. 7 at King's mountain. Three hundred of his men were killed or wounded, and 850 taken prisoners.

Not satisfied with the success of Gates, Congress ordered an inquiry into his conduct, and general Greene succeeded

Dec. 2 him in the command of the southern department.

He joined the army lying at Charlotte, much reduced in numbers, and but ill provided with arms, clothing, stores and provisions. Greene was of an active and enterprising disposition, and weak as his army was, he despatched Morgan across the Catawba, to narrow the limits of the British, and cut off their supplies. In the meantime, he marched down the Pedee, with the main body of his forces, and encamped near the northern boundary of North Carolina.

In consequence of this movement, Cornwallis was placed between Morgan and Greene; and he took advantage of his position to detach Tarleton, with a chosen body of troops, to cut off Morgan before he could rejoin the main body. The American leader received information of this movement, and retreated with all possible speed. If he could cross the Broad river, he was safe; but Tarleton pursued with such vigor, that it seemed most probable he would overtake the Americans before they could effect a passage. If his forces should be attacked while retreating, a defeat would be almost inevitable; and in preference to running such a risk, Morgan resolved to fight a battle on ground of his own choosing.

He selected a position at the Cowpens, where he drew up his troops, and awaited the arrival of Tarleton. His continental infantry was stationed on an eminence, in an open wood, with the cavalry in their rear. These two corps amounted to about 600 men, and on them rested all Morgan's hopes. The front line consisted entirely of militia.

Jan. 17 Tarleton soon arrived, and formed his men. Confident of victory, they rushed forward with a shout. The militia of the front line fled at the first fire; but the continentals stood firm, and fought with great bravery. The contest was long and bloody. The enemy pressed forward, and the continentals retreated, but with perfect order, over the hill; the British followed close, and were within thirty yards of the American line, when suddenly the continentals faced about, and poured in upon them an unexpected and deadly fire. The British ranks were thrown into disorder; the continentals rushed forward with charged bayonets, and the enemy were completely broken. In the meantime, the American horse, under colonel Washington, had charged Tarleton's cavalry, and driven them from the ground. Up-

wards of 100 of the British were killed, and 500 were made prisoners. The American loss was less than thirty men. Tarleton, with the fragments of his detachments, joined Cornwallis, who immediately moved, with all his forces, in pursuit of Morgan. But that able officer, well knowing he would be closely pursued, had continued his retreat without the least delay; and he succeeded in crossing the Catawba ford, two hours before the British reached the opposite bank. In the course of the following night, an immense flood of rain rendered the river impassable.

Greene now arrived, and taking in person the command of Morgan's troops, turned his whole attention towards effecting a junction between the two divisions of his army.

On the 1st of February, Cornwallis forced the passage of the Catawba, at a ford guarded only by a few militia and immediately recommenced the pursuit. Greene's rear guard had a smart skirmish with the van of Cornwallis', which came up just as the American army, — all but the rear guard and a part of the baggage, — had crossed the Yadkin. The men escaped under cover of the night; but the baggage fell into the hands of the enemy. Greene was again preserved by a flood of rain which rendered the Yadkin impassable. He proceeded to Guilford, where he was joined by the other division, which had been marching north to meet him; but as he was still too weak to fight Cornwallis, he continued his retreat, and crossed the Dan into Virginia. He completed the passage of the river, just as the British army appeared on the opposite bank.

Cornwallis retired to Hillsborough, then the capital of North Carolina, where he took measures for recruiting his army and restoring the royal government. Unwilling to leave him in quiet possession of North Carolina, Greene soon recrossed the Dan. But he was not strong enough to hazard a battle; and to prevent Cornwallis from forcing him into one, he was obliged, every night, to occupy a new position. Several sharp skirmishes took place, in which the advantage was generally with the Americans. Reinforcements came in from time to time, and Greene's army having at length increased to 4000 men, 1500 of whom were continentals, and 2500 militia, he, in his turn, sought a battle.

The armies met at Guilford. Greene's first line consisted of the North Carolina militia; the Virginia militia formed the second line; behind these, the continentals were drawn up, but of the four regiments, only one was veteran, the others consisting entirely of new levies. The first line fled without once discharging their muskets; the Virginia militia fought better, but in a short time they were completely routed. The British now pressed forward against the continentals. One of the new levied regiments broke and fled in the utmost disorder; the others fought with great bravery; but Greene, fearing they might be surrounded, ordered a retreat. In this battle the British lost 532 men, including several valuable officers. The Americans had 400 men killed and wounded; but the militia corps, though they suffered little in the action, were broken and almost entirely dispersed.

Greene retired to the Ironworks on Troublesome creek, where he expected to be again attacked; but Cornwallis had suffered so much by the battle of Guilford, and experienced so much difficulty in obtaining provisions, that he found himself obliged to retire, first to Ramsey's mills, and then to Wilmington. Greene followed him for some distance; but at length filed off, with the design of carrying the war into South Carolina, where Lord Rawdon commanded a considerable army. Greene had been marching for several days against Rawdon, before Cornwallis discovered his destination. It was now too late to attempt forming a junction with the forces in South Carolina, and Cornwallis resolved to imitate the bold policy of Greene, and to advance north into Virginia.

Lord Rawdon was stationed at Camden with the principal part of his forces; but numerous fortified posts, extending from Charleston to Augusta, were occupied by British and loyalist garrisons. Greene encamped before Camden; but he was not strong enough to besiege it in form. Rawdon drew his forces out of the town, and attacked Greene, at Hobkirk's Hill. At first the Americans were successful; but the fortune of the day afterwards changed, and Greene was obliged to draw off his forces. The loss was about equal, and amounted to about 250 men on each side.

In the meantime, colonel Lee, at the head of his cavalry, had been sent to join Marion, who still kept up a partizan war-

fare in the northeastern part of the state. After uniting their forces, these two officers had marched southward, and besieged and taken fort Watson on the Santee. They afterwards laid siege to fort Motte, and threatened to cut off all communication between Charleston and the British army.

Lord Rawdon had been reinforced by 600 men, under colonel Watson, and was now much stronger than Greene; but alarmed for the safety of fort Motte, he resolved to retire into the lower country. He was too late; fort Motte was taken before he could reach it; and about May 12 the same time, the post at Orangeburgh had surrendered to Sumpter. Lord Rawdon now retired to Monk's corner, — a convenient station for covering the country in the neighborhood of Charleston; and Greene marched on to besiege Ninety Six, a strong post held by the British between Camden and Augusta.

He pressed the siege vigorously, and on the 18th of June, was joined by Lee, who in conjunction with a body of militia, commanded by general Pickens, had besieged and taken the town of Augusta. But in a few days the unwelcome intelligence was received, that Rawdon had been reinforced by three regiments lately arrived from Ireland, and was advancing to raise the siege of Ninety Six. Greene attempted to carry the place by storm, before Rawdon could arrive. The men marched boldly to the June 18 assault; but the place was gallantly defended, and after losing 155 men, the Americans were obliged to retire. Rawdon was already in the neighborhood, and he followed the American army for some distance; but at length he gave up the pursuit and returned to Ninety Six.

Various marches and manœuvres followed; till on the 8th of September the armies met at Eutaw, on the Santee, where the generals resolved to try the fortune of another battle. In the first part of the action the British were routed and driven entirely off the field. But a party having thrown themselves into a large brick house, and others occupying a picketed garden adjoining, they resisted and repulsed every attempt to dislodge them; and in the meantime the flying troops rallied, formed anew, and succeeded in maintaining their ground. The armies lost, each, about 700 men. Both sides claimed the victory; but in fact it

belonged to neither. However, the Americans derived from it all the advantages of success, for the British immediately retreated to Monk's corner. Here they were too strongly posted for Greene to attack them, and he retired with his army to the high hills of Santee.

In this active campaign, the skill and courage of general Greene had been very conspicuous. With an army far inferior to the forces opposed to him, he had recovered the whole of Georgia and the Carolinas, except the sea-ports of Wilmington, Charleston and Savannah. The army had displayed an uncommon share of activity and courage — particularly the cavalry under colonels Lee and Washington, — and almost without a murmur, had endured the severest sufferings from want of adequate clothing and provisions. The sufferings occasioned by this ardent struggle, were not confined to the army. The inhabitants of the country were about equally divided. One half were in favor of independence, the other sided with the British. Mutual injuries had sharpened their resentment; neighbor had armed against neighbor; and the most shocking outrages were perpetrated on both sides. The whole country had become one continued scene of blood and slaughter. But these turbulent times were now fast drawing to a close.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

State of the Army. — Revolt of the Pennsylvania line. — Reforms in the Executive Departments. — Robert Morris superintendent of Finance. — Operations of Cornwallis and La Fayette in Virginia. — Arrival of a French fleet. — Resolution to act against Cornwallis. — New London destroyed. — Cornwallis surrenders. — Treaty of peace. — New York evacuated by the British army. — Washington resigns his commission

At the north, the year had opened with no very favorable prospects. Congress had some time before resolved to issue no more bills of credit; and the only resources for clothing and feeding the troops, were requisitions on the states slowly and unwillingly complied with, and some small loans and

subsidies obtained in France. During the winter, the troops were repeatedly on the point of starvation; they were extremely ill clothed, and had served almost twelve months without pay. The Pennsylvania regiments, besides these general causes of dissatisfaction, had some peculiar grievances of their own, growing out of the terms upon which they had been enlisted, and on the first of January, 1781, they broke out into open mutiny. Sir Henry Clinton endeavored to make advantage of this revolt, and sent persons to negotiate with the mutineers. But he was disappointed; his emissaries were seized; and the utmost detestation was manifested at the idea of going over to the enemy. This revolt was of very dangerous example, and a source of much perplexity; but at length certain terms were agreed upon; by which a part of the Pennsylvania troops were to receive their discharge, and the rest the arrearages of their pay.

About this time a reform took place in the organization of the executive departments of the general government. Everything had hitherto been carried on by committees; but the increasing poverty of Congress compelled them to abandon this expensive and unwieldy system. Robert R. Livingston was appointed secretary of foreign affairs, general Lincoln, secretary of war, and Robert Morris, superintendent of finance.

To considerable political talents, Mr Morris added a degree of mercantile enterprise, information and credit seldom equalled; and he exerted himself to the utmost to give order and solidity to the deranged finances of the country. By his advice and procurement, the Bank of North America was established at Philadelphia; and by the help of this institution, he was enabled to avail himself of his own private credit, and to turn the public resources to such account, as to raise the funds necessary for carrying on the war.

On the 20th May, Cornwallis, whom we left on his march into Virginia, arrived at Petersburg, where he united his forces with an army of 3000 men, which, under the command of generals Arnold and Philips, had been spreading desolation through the lower parts of that state. The defence of Virginia had been entrusted to the marquis de la Fayette. This young nobleman, inspired by an ardent love of liberty, had left all the pleasures of home, and the enjoyment of an ample fortune, and at an early period of the war,



came to America to assist in fighting the battles of freedom. He was received with the greatest enthusiasm; was appointed by Congress a major general in the army of the United States; and had served with good reputation.

La Fayette was at Richmond, with 1000 continental soldiers, and 2000 militia. The number of Cornwallis' army was much greater; and he resolved, if possible, to bring the marquis to an action. But La Fayette retreated with rapidity and skill, and succeeded in forming a junction with general Wayne, who had been sent to his assistance with the regiments of the Pennsylvania line. Cornwallis retired to Williamsburgh; and La Fayette, whose forces had now increased to 4000 men, followed him, and took post on James river, about twenty miles distant from that town. Some other movements took place, and Cornwallis finally established himself at Yorktown, a position which he fortified with the greatest care.

In the meantime, Washington was contemplating active operations against New York; and the French troops, which had been landed the last year at Newport, and had remained there ever since, were marched to the highlands in order to form a junction with the American army. The count de Grasse arrived from the West Indies, with twentyeight ships of the line, and being joined by Barras, who lay at Newport, the strength of their fleet gave the French a temporary command of the sea.

The new levies had joined Washington's army so slowly, that he judged himself not strong enough to attempt anything against New York. That plan was abandoned; and it was now determined to employ the land and naval forces against Cornwallis. Clinton had intercepted some letters of Washington, in which the attack on New York was mentioned; and he was so much alarmed for the safety of that place, that the army was far advanced on its march against Cornwallis before Clinton gave up the idea, that an attack was intended against himself. When it was too late to obstruct the progress of the American army, Clinton sent an expedition, under the command of Arnold, against Connecticut; probably with the design of alarming Washington, and recalling him to the north.

Arnold landed not far from New London. Fort Griswold, at the entrance of the river Thames, was taken by

Sept. 6 assault, and the garrison slaughtered without mercy. As the British entered the fort, one of their officers asked, who commanded? 'I did,' said colonel Ledyard, 'but you do, now.' With these words he presented his sword to the officer, who received it, and instantly plunged it into Ledyard's bosom. New London was burned; but Arnold, who knew and dreaded the spirit of the Connecticut militia, hastily re-embarked his troops, and returned to New York without effecting anything further.

At length, the allied troops arrived before Yorktown; the French, under the command of Rochambeau and Sept. 25 Chatelleux, the Americans under the command of Washington; while De Grasse, with his fleet, blocked up the entrance of the Chesapeake, and prevented any succors arriving by sea. York is on the south side of York river. On the opposite shore is Gloucester point, a piece of land extending into the channel, and this point, as well as York, was occupied by the British army. The communication between these two posts was commanded by the British batteries, and by several ships of war, which lay under their protection. A detachment of the allied army was sent to blockade Gloucester, while the weight of the attack was directed against York.

The first parallel was commenced within 600 yards of the British lines; the batteries were soon completed; Oct. 6 heavy cannon mounted on them, and a tremendous fire opened on the place. Five days after, the second parallel was began within 300 yards of the British works. Two advanced redoubts, occupied by the enemy, enfiladed this parallel, and annoyed, extremely, the workmen employed in the trenches. It was resolved to carry these redoubts by assault; and to take advantage of the spirit of emulation manifested by the troops, the attack of one was committed to the Americans, that of the other to the French. The American storming party was commanded by the marquis La Fayette, the French by the baron de Viomieul. Both parties advanced with equal courage, and the redoubts were carried at the point of the bayonet. They were immediately included in the second parallel, and the fire of the new batteries was soon after opened. The situation of Cornwallis was fast becoming desperate. He attempted a sally, but was repulsed; he thought of passing his army

across the river, forcing a passage through the troops that blockaded Gloucester, and attempting to reach New York by land. But his boats were driven down the river, and it became impossible to carry, even this desperate scheme, into execution. There was no other resource but capitulation; and on the 19th of October, the whole army, in number over 7000 men, surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

The capture of this army excited the greatest joy throughout the country. It was justly considered, as in effect, the closing scene of the revolutionary struggle. The war had become so unpopular in England, that the House of Commons voted, 'they would consider as enemies to their king and country, all who advised a further prosecution of it.' Steps were accordingly taken for negotiating a peace. Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and John Adams, were the agents employed on the part of America.

The negotiation was protracted not only by the ordinary diplomatic delays, but by a willingness on the part of France, — such is the unsubstantial nature of national friendships — to deprive the United States of the right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland, and a desire to limit their western boundary by the Alleghany mountains. But the firmness, penetration and judgment of the American commissioners, carried them triumphantly through all these embarrassments, and on the 30th of November the preliminary articles were signed at Paris. On the 20th of the following January a cessation of hostilities was agreed upon, but the treaty of Peace was not finally concluded before the 25th of September.

Holland had acknowledged the independence of the United States, the year before; and early this year it was acknowledged by Sweden, Denmark, Spain, Russia and Prussia. Treaties of amity and commerce were concluded with most of these nations. On the 19th of April peace was proclaimed in the American army, just *eight* years after the war had begun by the battle of Lexington. Charleston and Savannah had been evacuated by the British in December, 1782; and on the 25th of November, 1783, their army left New York.

The war was finished; its object had been obtained, and

the United States of America were allowed and acknowledged as an independent nation. The struggle had been severe. Some of the states had been wasted by the savage license of civil contention; others had suffered from the presence of hostile armies, or the plundering incursions of the enemy. Commerce had been destroyed, agriculture interrupted, and the whole country had felt the heavy pressure of war and taxation. Every part of the community had acted and suffered in the cause; but the palm of supereminent merit, may justly be ascribed to that gallant and devoted army, which had fought so bravely, and shed its blood so copiously during the fluctuating fortunes of an eight years' war. These patriotic soldiers had experienced every variety of suffering; not only the ordinary hardships of warfare, but sickness, cold, hunger, nakedness,—and what was still harder to bear, the injustice and ingratitude of that country they had loved and served so well. Unpaid, unclothed, their constitutions broken down by the fatigues and hardships they had undergone, and all the little property any of them might have possessed when they entered the army, expended in providing the necessary means of discharging their military duties;—involved in debt, and without even money enough to carry them to their homes, they were about to be turned upon the world to seek their fortunes where they could find them.

It was not to be expected that all this would be submitted to in perfect silence. Great discontents prevailed; and certain anonymous addresses, written with much spirit and ability, were circulated among the officers, in which they were called upon not to resign their swords, till they had extorted from an ungrateful country the justice it was unwilling to do them. But the great prudence and almost unlimited influence of Washington, joined to their own inflexible patriotism, prevented the army from following this advice. Better counsels prevailed; the country was saved from a civil war; and the army and officers, in a spirit of patriotic nobleness such as the world never before saw, submitted, with dignified forbearance, to what seemed to be an irremediable evil.

An apology for the remissness of congress in discharging the dues of the army, may be found in its utter inability. It had no funds. The paper money had ceased to

circulate ; and the requisitions on the states were almost entirely disregarded. The states might plead as an excuse for *their* remissness, the great exhaustion and universal poverty produced by a long and expensive war. These excuses are not without weight, — but they are far from being satisfactory. Nothing can excuse injustice and ingratitude ; and when the neglect of the states to satisfy claims so fairly due, is contrasted with the patriotic forbearance of the army, what generous heart can help feeling shame and indignation at the one, and bestowing a well merited admiration on the other ?

In the year 1780, when a considerable change was made in the organization of the troops, congress on the earnest recommendation of Washington, — as an inducement to continue in the service, and as some small reward for their labors and sufferings, — had voted to allow the officers half pay for life. This vote, though a measure of undeniable policy and justice, was extremely unpopular throughout the states. It seemed to be imitating too much the customs of Europe ; and in the earlier civil and military arrangements of the United States, a vehement, and often injudicious, dread of European systems, was felt and expressed. The officers out of regard to the prejudices of their countrymen, agreed to receive five years' full pay in lieu of the half pay for life ; and a few months before the army was disbanded, congress passed a resolution to that effect.

The army received three months' pay in ready money, and the rest of their dues in continental certificates ; but the credit of congress was so low that these certificates were of very little immediate value.\* In the course of the summer, a great number of the troops were dismissed on furloughs ; and on the 18th of October, congress issued a proclamation, for disbanding the troops, from and after the third of November following. As soon as New York was evacuated by the British, Washington entered the city with that part of the army which was not yet discharged. Here he took leave of his officers ; and having repaired to Anna-

\* They were paid in full after the adoption of the new constitution. But this act of policy and justice was of little benefit to the revolutionary soldiers, most of whom had been compelled by sheer necessity, to dispose of their certificates at the rate of two or three shillings for the pound, which was for several years, all they were worth.

polis, he was received by congress at a public audience, when he delivered his commission into the hands Dec. 25 of the president. 'Having finished the work assigned me,' he said, 'I retire from the great theatre of action; and bidding an affectionate farewell to this august body, under whose orders I have so long acted, I here offer my commission and take leave of all the employments of public life.'

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

Defects of the confederation. — Weakness of Congress. — The public debt. — Difficulties with Great Britain. — Depressed state of Commerce. — Meeting of Commissioners at Annapolis. — A general convention recommended. — State of parties. — Insurrection in Massachusetts. — The convention meets. — The constitution formed. — Parties for and against it. — The Federalist. — The State conventions. — Constitution accepted by ten States. — Time fixed for its operation to commence.

It had frequently happened, during the war, that great embarrassments had been experienced, from the 1784 imperfect nature of the confederation of the states, and from the limited powers entrusted to the congress. But it was not till after the peace, that the inefficiency of this form of government was fully displayed. As soon as the country was delivered from the presence of a foreign enemy, the authority of congress became merely nominal. Its requisitions, though often renewed, were almost entirely disregarded; and although its members made great efforts to restore the public credit, and to give some efficiency to the administration of the general government, they found it impossible to raise sums sufficient to pay even the interest of the public debt.

Difficulties too, existed with Great Britain, owing to the non-execution of certain articles of the treaty of peace. The power of congress was inadequate to enforce the execution of that part of the treaty, which related to the payment of debts due to British subjects; and the British gov-

ernment, in consequence refused to surrender certain forts on the lakes, which belonged to the United States, but which, during the war, had fallen into the hands of the British. The Indians on the frontiers were at war with the United States, and there was no hope of peace so long as these western posts should be garrisoned by British troops. The foreign trade of the country had been almost entirely ruined by the long continuance of the war; and the unwillingness of the states to confer on congress the power of establishing commercial regulations, prevented its revival. The control of American commerce passed into the hands of foreigners, who imported vast quantities of goods; and the people, besides the public burdens, soon found themselves oppressed by a load of private debt.

The most judicious and best informed of the people, were desirous of conferring on congress some real and effectual power. But a large number of persons in every state, were very jealous of any such transfer of authority; and seemed to think the public liberties would be lost whenever the states resigned the least part of their individual sovereignty. By the influence of these opinions every attempt to strengthen the hands of congress was defeated, and the public prospect grew more gloomy every day. No modification could be made in the articles of confederation without the consent of all the states; and a plan for regulating commerce, and raising a revenue, though agreed to by all the other states, was defeated by the single negative of New York.

In the spring of 1785, commissioners appointed by the states of Virginia and Maryland, met at Alex-  
 1785 andria, to form a compact concerning the navigation of the Potomac. These commissioners, after attending to the business for which they were appointed, agreed to recommend to their respective states, the appointment of other commissioners, with power to establish a tariff of duties on imports, to which the laws of both states should conform. Virginia assented to this proposal; and her assembly passed an additional resolution,  
 1786 directing the proposition to be communicated to all the states, and inviting them all to send deputies to the meeting.

In compliance with this invitation, the delegates of six

states,\* assembled at Annapolis, in the fall of 1786. Mr Dickenson was appointed chairman; and they proceeded to discuss the objects for which they had convened. But they soon discovered that powers much more ample than any they possessed, were necessary, if they desired to afford any effectual relief to the multiplied disorders with which the country was threatened. For this reason, as well as on account of the small number of states represented in the convention, they agreed on a report to their respective states, in which they strongly insisted on the necessity of amending the federal compact, and recommended the appointment of deputies by all the states, to assemble at Philadelphia, the ensuing May.

In the meantime, the public disorders became more and more alarming. There sprung up in every part  
 1787 of the country a party desirous of abolishing all debts and all taxes; and loudly demanding new issues of paper money, already the fruitful source of so much injustice, fraud, and suffering. In Massachusetts and New Hampshire, this spirit prevailed so far, that large bodies of men assembled in arms; interrupted the courts of justice; and threatened to dissolve the government. These dangerous movements† were suppressed by the vigorous efforts of Sullivan and Bowdoin, the respective governors of New Hampshire and Massachusetts;—but were sufficient to alarm the whole thinking part of the community, and to call the attention of every one, to the necessity of some immediate improvement in the form and administration of the general government.

Congress had passed a resolution in accordance with the report of the convention at Annapolis; and on the second Monday of May the deputies of twelve states assembled at Philadelphia.‡ General Washington, though very reluctant to leave the retirement of private life, was so impressed with the dangerous situation of the country and the importance of the present meeting, that he had consented to accept a seat in the convention, as a delegate from Virginia. He

\* New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland and Virginia.

† This insurrection was known in Massachusetts, as *Shay's rebellion*, from Daniel Shays, its principal leader.

‡ Rhode Island sent no delegate to this convention.



was unanimously appointed its president, and saw himself surrounded by the ablest men the country could supply. There was but little difference in the convention, as to the great principles of the system which should be adopted. But its details were very strongly contested; and more than once, the convention was in danger of separating without accomplishing the purpose for which it had assembled. But a spirit of compromise and forbearance prevailed; and after a sitting of about four months, the federal constitution, as it now stands, — (except a few Sept. 17 amendments afterwards added,) — was approved and signed by all the members then present. It was resolved that this constitution should be submitted to conventions, to be assembled in each state; and provision was made that it should go into operation as soon as nine states should agree to accept it.

The constitution thus submitted to the public, was obliged to stand a series of most severe attacks. The whole community was divided into *federalists* and *anti-federalists*. The anti-federalists, a large and powerful party, opposed, most strenuously, the adoption of the proposed constitution. They could not endure the thought of surrendering a particle of the individual sovereignty of the states; and exerted themselves to the utmost to prejudice the public mind against the new system. The federalists, on the other hand, conscious that the salvation of the country depended on what should now be done, strained every nerve to secure the adoption of the scheme recommended by the convention.

The press teemed with pamphlets and essays on this interesting subject; and it was apparent that both  
1788 parties believed their dearest rights and privileges staked upon the question. A series of essays entitled, *The Federalist*, — the joint production of Hamilton, Madison and Jay, — appeared in the New York papers, in which the constitution was vindicated and explained, in a very able manner; and which contributed not a little, to enlighten the public mind on this most important subject.

The state conventions met; and the contest was again renewed. Several of the states accepted the constitution without hesitation, and by large majorities; but in others, the debates were very spirited; and in several of the con-

ventions, especially those of Massachusetts, Virginia and New York, the constitution was accepted only by small majorities, and not without the recommendation of numerous amendments.\* It having been accepted by ten states, congress passed a resolution, ratifying the constitution; and the fourth of March, next ensuing, was fixed on as the time when the new system should go into operation. Presidential electors appointed in the different states, met and balloted, — and senators and representatives were chosen, to constitute a congress under the new constitution.

## CHAPTER XVII.

Washington elected first President. — His journey from Mount Vernon to New York. — First session of Congress. — A revenue provided. — Other laws. — Heads of departments. — President visits New England. — Second session of Congress. — Public debt funded. — Debates on this subject. — Indian wars. — Treaty with the Creeks. — Harmer defeated. — Bank of the United States. — Vermont and Kentucky admitted into the Union. — President's southern tour. — First census. — Commerce and Navigation.

THE spirit of carelessness and inefficiency, which had characterised the last years of the confederation, was still so prevalent, that although the 4th of March had been fixed upon, as the day on which the

\* The following table shows the date of the adoption in each state :—

Delaware,	December 7, 1787.	Without amendments.
Pennsylvania,	" 12, "	" "
New Jersey,	" 18, "	" "
Georgia,	January 2, 1788.	" "
Connecticut,	" 9, "	" "
Massachusetts,	February 7, "	Amendments recommended.
Maryland,	April 28, "	Without amendments.
South Carolina,	May 23, "	Amendments recommended.
New Hampshire,	June 21, "	" "
Virginia	" 27, "	" "
New York,	July 26, "	" "
North Carolina,	November 21, "	" "
Rhode Island,	May 29, 1790.	" "

new system of government was to go into operation, yet a house of representatives was not organized till the 1st, nor a senate till the 6th of April:

The first business of the Senate was, to open and count the votes for president and vice president. General Washington had received a unanimous vote; and was declared by the Senate to be duly elected president of the United States. John Adams had the next highest number of votes, and was declared vice president. The result of the election had, long before, been known; and Washington, though very reluctant to leave the retirement of Mount Vernon, had resolved not to decline the laborious honor of this new and untried office. The congress had assembled at New York, and as soon as Washington was officially notified of his election, he set out for that city.

It was his wish that this journey might be private. But the full flow of gratitude and veneration could not be restrained; crowds flocked about him wherever he stopped; he was escorted from town to town by corps of militia, and cavalcades of citizens; and was everywhere received with unaffected pleasure. The people of Trenton remembered the battles fought in their neighborhood twelve years before; and though his reception at other places was more splendid, it was no where so graceful and elegant. On the bridge over the river which divides the town, a triumphal arch was erected, ornamented with flowers and laurel, and supported by thirteen pillars twined with evergreen. This arch bore the following inscription — ‘The defender of the mothers will be the protector of the daughters.’ Beneath the arch was a party of matrons, attended by their daughters dressed in white, and holding baskets of flowers in their hands. As Washington approached, they began to sing a little ode composed for the occasion, and ended with strewing their flowers before him.\*

\* The ode was as follows: —

Welcome, mighty chief, once more,  
Welcome to this grateful shore;  
Now no mercenary foe  
Aims again the fatal blow,  
Aims at THEE, the fatal blow.

Virgins fair and matrons grave,  
Those thy conquering arms did save,

Having arrived at New York, where he was received by an immense concourse of people, Washington attended in the senate chamber; took the oaths prescribed by the constitution; and commenced the discharge of his official duties by an address to the senate and house of representatives.

The spirit of party, which had so much divided the country on the question of adopting the constitution, had by no means entirely subsided; several, both of the representatives and the senators, had been chosen from among the anti-federalists; but in both branches of the legislature, a large majority was friendly to the new system, and determined to give it a fair trial, and an effective support.

Among the various important subjects which awaited the deliberations of congress, the first to which they gave their attention, was the provision of an adequate revenue. A bill was introduced by Mr Madison for the purpose of imposing certain duties on imports, and on the tonnage of vessels, which, after considerable debate, and several modifications, passed into a law. Acts were also passed establishing the departments of state, of the treasury, and of war; and an act organizing and regulating the judiciary of the United States. Twelve articles of amendment to the new constitution were recommended by congress, ten of which were afterwards accepted by the legislatures of three fourths of the states, and became, in consequence, a part of the constitution.

The president, with the concurrence and assent of the Senate, proceeded to fill the new offices, which had been established by the constitution, and by congress. Mr Jay was appointed chief justice; Mr Jefferson was made secretary of state; Mr Hamilton, secretary of the treasury; general Knox, secretary of war; and Mr Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, attorney general.

After congress had adjourned, the president made a tour into New England, and was everywhere received with that consideration and regard, which his character and services so richly merited.

The re-establishment of the public credit, and an adequate provision for the public debt, were strongly recommended to the attention of congress in the president's speech at the opening of the next ses-

1790

Build for thee triumphal bowers;  
 Strew, ye fair, his way with flowers,  
 • Strew your hero's way with flowers.

sion; and the secretary of the treasury presented a report, which exhibited with clearness, and defended with great ability, a detailed plan for effecting this desirable purpose. The public debt, justly denominated by Mr Hamilton 'the price of liberty,' was estimated at fiftyfour millions;—the *foreign debt*, consisting of loans obtained in France and Holland, amounting to about twelve millions, and the *domestic debt*, comprising not only loans from individual citizens, but a large amount of treasury certificates, issued for the pay and support of the army, and other necessary purposes, amounting to fortytwo millions. In addition to the continental debt, every state in the union had debts of its own, contracted in the course of the war, and in the public defence. The aggregate of the state debts exceeded twenty millions, and Hamilton recommended the assumption of these debts by the general government, as a measure both of sound policy and substantial justice.

As respected the foreign debt, there was no difference of opinion; all agreed that it must be punctually and fully paid. But respecting the domestic debt, and the assumption of the state debts, there was, by no means, the same unanimity. The continental securities had been for several years of small value, and had passed from hand to hand, at a price much below par. No one denied that the original holders of these certificates were entitled to be paid in full; but it was very earnestly contended, that the present holders, having obtained the securities at a price far below their nominal value, were not justly entitled to receive more than they had paid. To this it was answered, that the public could not take advantage of its own wrong. The neglect of the nation to pay, was the reason why the securities had depreciated. The original promise was to pay the whole, and to preserve the public faith, the whole must be paid.

The assumption of the state debts was opposed, on the ground that it threw too much power into the hands of the general government, and tended to the annihilation of the state sovereignties. It was said to be unfair and unjust, since it placed all the states on a level, both those which had exerted themselves to pay off their debts, and those which had not. It was replied that the debts were contracted in the service of the nation, and therefore ought to be paid by the nation. The objection of inequality was obviated by the

proposal of a subsequent settlement to be entered into between the union and the several states.\*

The plan proposed by the secretary was debated at great length; and after several modifications, passed the house of representatives by a majority of two votes. Even this small majority was obtained only by an arrangement, that another bill should simultaneously pass the house, by which the seat of government was removed to Philadelphia, and at the expiration of ten years, to the banks of the Potomac.

The order and confidence which followed the establishment of an efficient system of national government; the funding of the public debt; the revival of commerce and navigation; and the slower but certain operations of private industry, soon wrought a striking alteration in the situation of the country, and of individuals. Public and private prosperity revived together; and though many continued to doubt the excellence of the new system, all felt its invigorating influence.

The Indians on the western and southern frontiers still remained at war with the states; and their hostile dispositions were inflamed by the machinations of Spanish and British agents. The Creeks could bring into the field a force of 6000 fighting men, and were headed by Alexander M'Gillivray, the son of a white man and an Indian woman. He had been educated at Charleston, where he showed indications of considerable talents; but afterwards returned to the people of his mother's tribe, who elected him to be their chief. A negotiation with the Creeks had been some time pending without the prospect of any favorable result; but M'Gillivray was at length induced to repair to New York, where a treaty of peace was finally concluded.

The negotiations with the Indians northwest of the Ohio, were not so successful. These tribes, the Wyandots, Shawanees, Ottawas, Chippewas, Potowatomes, Miamis, Kickapoos, and several others, could muster a force of 5000 warriors; and many of them, particularly those on the Miamis, and the Wabash, were at open war with the United States. Despairing of any accommodation with these tribes, the

\* Such a settlement afterwards took place, and several of the states were found largely indebted to the United States; but they were never called upon to pay the balances against them.

president resolved on vigorous measures; and general Harmer, with about 1500 men, partly regular troops, but principally militia, was ordered to attack them. He marched into their country, and destroyed the towns on the Sioto; but in two engagements between bodies of the enemy and detachments of Harmer's troops, the Americans were defeated with considerable loss. Harmer retreated, and the frontiers were again infested by Indian war parties.

At the next session of Congress, an act was passed, by the recommendation of the secretary of the treasury, but not without very vigorous opposition, establishing a national bank, with a capital of ten millions; and another act, which was opposed with equal vehemence, for augmenting the revenue by an excise duty on distilled spirits.

At the same session, laws were passed for admitting Vermont and Kentucky to become members of the union.

The first settlement, within the limits of Vermont, was at fort Dummer,\* on the Connecticut river. This fort was built in 1724, by the people of Massachusetts, as a protection against the Indians. Some time afterwards, the French Canadians sailed down lake Champlain, and established several posts along its eastern shore. But owing to its exposed situation, Vermont remained almost a wilderness, till the last French and Indian war had terminated in the conquest of Canada. After this period, it was rapidly peopled by emigrants from Massachusetts and Connecticut. Its territory was supposed to be covered by the patent of New Hampshire; the settlers obtained grants of land from the governor of that state; and the country was known as the *New Hampshire grants*. But New York put in a claim to this newly opened country; and the dispute being referred to the king, — for it was during the colonial times, — he decided in her favor. In consequence of this decision, the governor of New York took possession of the disputed territory, and declared all the grants of land, made by the governor of New Hampshire, to be void; and endeavored to compel the settlers to take out new grants under the authority of New York. The settlers having already paid for their lands, refused to purchase them anew; and the dispute growing, by degrees,

\* This fort, situated at the southeast corner of Vermont, was believed, when built, to be within the limits of Massachusetts.

warmer and warmer, in 1777, they declared themselves independent of New York, and formed a distinct government of their own. In the meantime, the revolutionary war had begun. Vermont bore her full share in that war, though, through the influence of New York, she was refused admittance into the confederacy, and was not even acknowledged as a separate state. At last, New York despaired of enforcing her claims; and agreed to renounce them for the sum of 30,000 dollars. The money was paid; and this obstacle being removed, the independence of Vermont was acknowledged, and she was admitted to become a member of the union.

The country now included in the state of Kentucky, was first explored in 1767, by John Finley, of North Carolina. It was afterwards visited by the celebrated Daniel Boone; and the first settlements were began in 1773, under his guidance, and on the banks of the Kentucky river. Other emigrants followed; and the lands were gradually occupied under grants from Virginia, of which state the new settlements were considered a part. From its first settlement, Kentucky was severely harassed by wars with the Indians; but its population increased rapidly; and in 1791, an arrangement was made between its inhabitants, and the people of Virginia, for erecting the newly settled territory into an independent state. This agreement was sanctioned by congress; and an act was passed for admitting Kentucky into the union, from and after the first day of June, 1792.

After the adjournment of Congress, the president made a tour through the southern states; and notwithstanding the opposition, which many of the measures proposed by his cabinet had met with in that part of the country, he was everywhere received with ardent affection and undiminished respect.

The first census was now completed, and the number of the inhabitants within the territories of the United States, was found to be nearly four millions. The revenue arising from duties on imports, and from the excise and other taxes recommended by Mr Hamilton, amounted to four millions eight hundred thousand dollars. The commerce and navigation of the country were in a flourishing condition, the annual amount of exports being nineteen millions, and of imports twenty millions. The shipping amounted to 280,000



tons, but was by no means sufficient to answer the demand, —nearly half the commerce of the country being carried on by foreign vessels.

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

Indian war. — St Clair appointed to the chief command. — Battle near the Miami villages. — St Clair retreats. — Army increased. — Mint established. — State of parties. — Mr Hamilton. — Mr Jefferson. — Federalists. — Republicans, or Democrats. — Opposition to the Administration. — Disturbances in the west of Pennsylvania. — Charges against Mr Hamilton — Not sustained. — The French revolution. — Its effect on parties in the United States. — War in Europe. — Washington's proclamation of neutrality. — Citizen Genet. — Democratic societies. — Genet recalled. — Resignation of Mr Jefferson. — Mr Madison's commercial resolutions. — Embargo. — Preparations for war. — Mission of Mr Jay. — Hamilton and Knox resign.

THE unfortunate situation of the frontiers, which, after the retreat of Harmer, were exposed to all the ravages of Indian warfare, had attracted the attention of Congress, and on the last day of the session, an act was passed increasing the regular army, and enabling the president to raise 2000 men, under the denomination of levies, to serve for six months against the Indians. The recruiting service was immediately commenced; and general St Clair, governor of the territory northwest of the Ohio, was appointed commander-in-chief. But as the common wages of labor far exceeded the pay of a soldier, the troops were raised with difficulty; and it was late in the season before the regiments were complete. In the meantime, two successive expeditions of mounted militia penetrated into the Indian country, killed a few of the enemy, made several prisoners, destroyed some towns, and wasted some corn-fields, but effected nothing decisive.

About the beginning of September, St Clair commenced his march. He advanced slowly, opening a road, and building forts at convenient places. In this way, he had arrived within fifteen miles of the Miami villages, when on the

fourth of November, about half an hour before sunrise, he was suddenly attacked in his camp by a large body of Indians. The assailants pressed forward with great rapidity. Firing from the ground, or the shelter afforded by the trees, and scarcely seen except when springing from one covert to another, they advanced in front and upon either flank close upon the American lines, and up to the very mouths of the field-pieces. The militia were posted in front. They were soon broken, and falling back on the regular troops, threw them also into disorder. The officers, most of whom had seen service, exerted themselves to rally the men, and partially succeeded. Colonel Darke twice charged the enemy, and drove them back at the point of the bayonet. But while they were pressed in one direction, their fire was poured in from every other, with fatal effect; and it soon became apparent, that nothing but immediate retreat could preserve the remnants of the army. Major Clarke covered the rear; and a most disorderly retreat immediately commenced. The Indians pursued the flying troops for four miles, and then returned to plunder the camp.\* The army suffered most severely. Out of 1400 men engaged, 630 were killed, and 360 wounded. Among the former, was general Butler, a brave and gallant officer.

Congress was in session when the news of this defeat arrived, — an event entirely unlooked for either  
Dec. by them or their constituents. They had expected a victory, and a speedy termination of the war, and were quite unprepared for so serious a disaster. The Indian war now assumed a more alarming aspect, and fears were entertained that other tribes might be persuaded to join those already in arms. A bill  
1792 was introduced for increasing the regular army to 5000 men, which, however, was not permitted to pass without a violent opposition. It was alleged, that increasing the regular army, was at the same time to increase the power of the president, a measure full of dangers to the liberties of the country. It was asserted that the militia were abundantly competent to defend the frontiers, and superior

\* This battle was fought in the southwest corner of the county of Mercer, on the western border of Ohio, near the head of the river Wabash.

in many respects to regular troops, for the enterprises of an Indian war. New taxes were voted to support the additional troops ; and an act passed for establishing a uniform militia. The other principal laws of the session were, an act creating a mint, and regulating the coinage, and an act apportioning the representatives among the states, according to the first census, and after the ratio of one for every 33,000.

The distinction of parties, both in congress and throughout the country, had now become marked and obvious. As the integrity of Washington was above all suspicion, and his popularity and influence almost unlimited, there was no one bold enough to head a party in opposition to him. Both parties professed unbounded respect for his person, and great confidence in his wisdom and abilities ; and he was too judicious to lessen the dignity of his character, by taking a side in party controversies. Mr Hamilton and Mr Jefferson were the actual heads of the two parties.

Very soon after their appointment to office, political differences, and perhaps private rivalry produced frequent collisions between the two secretaries, which terminated at length, in a fixed and settled hostility. This schism in his cabinet was a source of much disquietude to Washington, who felt a high respect for both, and an unwillingness to part with either. He exerted himself in vain to effect a reconciliation ; and the hostility of the rival secretaries, and of their respective parties, grew daily more decisive.

The party of Mr Hamilton took the name of *Federalists*,—a name which had previously been in use to designate the friends and supporters of the federal constitution ; and indeed a large portion of the old federal party was found ranged on the side of Mr Hamilton. The party of Mr Jefferson, which professed to excel in the true love of liberty, and in watchfulness over the interests of the people, were called *Democrats* by their opponents, and by themselves, *Republicans*. To this party most of those persons united themselves, who had been the advocates of state sovereignty, and who had opposed the adoption of the federal constitution.

The first object of all parties is power ; the most universal of party weapons is calumny ; and when men are intoxicated with the spirit of faction, they neither hear, nor

see, nor judge as at other times. If we are to credit the republicans, the federalists were hastening to subject their countrymen to the yoke of a monarchy; they could be satisfied with nothing short of a king and a titled order of nobility; and all their efforts were directed to the attainment of these favorite objects. On the other hand, the federalists asserted, that their enemies were the enemies of all good institutions whatever; that the democratic party had ever been the enemy of the constitution they were now seeking to destroy; and that under the mask of attachment to liberty, they sought the indulgence of every evil passion. Such sweeping denunciations are always false. There were good patriots and amiable men in both parties, — and the one was as little the enemy of liberty, as the other was the friend of anarchy and confusion.

The measures of the president's cabinet were generally such as were proposed and supported by the secretary of the treasury; and were of course, most violently opposed by the champions of the opposite party. The Indian war, and the ill success with which it was prosecuted, were favorite topics of public complaint. The internal revenue was another prominent object of censure; particularly the excise on distilled spirits, which had from the beginning been very unpopular, particularly in the western counties of Pennsylvania.

The opposition to these laws was carried so far that their execution was forcibly opposed by combinations among the people; and two successive meetings were held at Pittsburg in which the most violent resolutions were adopted, both against the laws themselves and all who should aid in carrying them into execution. A proclamation was issued by the president warning all persons to desist from combining to oppose the execution of the laws; but it met with very little attention.

Notwithstanding the height of party animosity, the popularity of Washington still remained unimpaired, and he was again unanimously chosen president. Mr Adams was likewise elected vice president, though not without opposition. He was a federalist; and George Clinton, governor of New York, the democratic candidate, received a considerable number of votes.

At the next session of congress, a violent attack was

1793      made on the secretary of the treasury, by Mr Giles of Virginia, who accused him of misconduct, in negotiating certain loans, which had been authorized by congress; and of leaving a large amount of public money unaccounted for. A most acrimonious debate ensued. But the vindication of Mr Hamilton, contained in three successive reports, furnished by himself, was quite unanswerable; and of sundry resolutions moved by Mr Giles, in censure of the secretary, only one received so many as sixteen votes.

The progress of the French revolution began now seriously to affect the politics of America. The citizens of the United States, in common with the friends of liberty in every other country, had regarded this event, at its commencement, with the most unmingled satisfaction; and this feeling was heightened by the gratitude and affection with which France had been regarded ever since she became our ally in the war of the revolution. But when the course of events disclosed the darker and bloodier scenes of that great drama, for which France was now furnishing the stage, men naturally divided into two parties. Those who thought no price too dear for liberty, were inclined to look with extreme indulgence on the affairs of France, and still cherished the hope, that out of the midst of blood and confusion, good would yet come. Such were the sentiments of Mr Jefferson, who had resided at the French court, during the earlier periods of the revolution, and whose imagination seems to have been strongly impressed with the corruption and injustice of the regal government.

Those on the other hand, who considered personal security, and the protection of property, as the best fruits of a free government, beheld with horror and alarm, the bloody executions, and the extensive confiscations of property, which had now become so frequent in France; and began to lose all regard for a revolution, which seemed about to uproot every social institution, however cherished or venerable. These were in general the sentiments of the federalists; and these opposite views of French affairs were combined with differences respecting the policy to be pursued towards Great Britain, the effect of which was perhaps equally influential.

The revolutionary war had naturally left in the minds of

the people, a deep and settled hostility towards England, — a disposition which is not yet entirely eradicated. This hostile feeling had been inflamed by the unwillingness of Great Britain to enter into any commercial arrangements; by her refusal to evacuate the western posts; and by a belief very general, and not perhaps unfounded, that the Indian war was protracted by the artifices of British agents.

This unfriendly feeling towards Great Britain, combined with partiality for France, had so far prevailed both in the cabinet and in congress, that it had been proposed to levy discriminating duties, intended to operate favorably on French commerce, and unfavorably on that of England. This proposal, which was advanced by the secretary of state, had been strenuously opposed by the secretary of the treasury, on the ground that all nations with whom we are at peace, ought to be treated alike; and that the proposed discrimination would operate as a tax on American industry, in favor of a foreign state. Mr Hamilton succeeded in defeating the measure; but he was stigmatised in consequence, as the friend of Great Britain, whose institutions he was accused of regarding with too high an admiration, and of being not a little inclined to imitate.

The war which had lately broken out in Europe, seemed likely to inflame to a dangerous degree these feelings of favor towards France, and dislike for Great Britain; and what made the crisis still more alarming, was the fact, that by the eleventh article of our treaty of alliance with France, we were bound to guaranty to her, the possession of her West India islands. But the president and his cabinet, decided after a long debate, and not without some final difference of opinion, that the clause of guarantee applied only to a *defensive* war, and that in a war of aggression, we were under no obligation to afford France the stipulated aid. But as great numbers were of a different opinion, the president judged it expedient to issue his proclamation of neutrality, in which the citizens of the United States were strictly enjoined to abstain from affording aid or assistance to either of the contending parties.

This was the beginning of a system which was afterwards strictly adhered to, by the government of the United States; and which, in the end, was productive of the most beneficial consequences. But in the present excited state

of the public mind, it was regarded by many with very little favor. It was a very common opinion, that the treaty of alliance obliged us to protect, at least the French West Indies; the war against France was regarded as a crusade against liberty; and the president himself did not escape censure for his coldness towards so glorious a cause.

The public mind was still further excited, and popular passion wrought up to a great pitch by citizen May Genet, who had been sent to the United States, as minister of the French republic. He had landed at Charleston, where, as well as at Philadelphia, New York, and every other place which he visited, he was received with marks of the most enthusiastic regard. Democratic societies were instituted, on the model of those famous clubs, at this time so powerful in France, and citizen Genet was the hero of these societies. Intoxicated by so favorable a reception, he complained that the proclamation of neutrality was a direct violation of the treaty with France; and even before he was accredited as a minister, he began to commission privateers in the name of the French republic, and to enlist officers and men for an expedition against Florida. When the president remonstrated against these outrageous proceedings, Genet replied in the haughtiest and most arrogant style; and finally threatened to appeal from the president to the people. But the appeal was not sustained. The people were disgusted at the insolence of the French minister, and public meetings were called in every part of the country, which expressly approved the conduct of the president and the proclamation of neutrality. Though a good deal disappointed at the event of his appeal, Genet still continued his vexatious and irregular proceedings; and even went so far as to enlist troops for an attack on the Spanish province of Louisiana. It was seriously debated in the cabinet, whether he ought not to be deprived of his diplomatic character; but news soon arrived that the party to which he belonged had fallen. He had been superseded, and Mr Fauchet, his successor, arrived soon after. The new minister brought strict orders to seize M. Genet and send him back to France; and nothing but the refusal of the president to authorise a forcible execution of these orders, saved Genet from the guillotine. This event did not take place till

the next year. On the last day of the present year, Mr Jefferson resigned the office of secretary of state. He was succeeded by Mr Randolph, the former attorney general.

The last official act of Mr Jefferson, was a report to congress on the commerce of the United States. This  
1794 report was followed by sundry resolutions moved by Mr Madison, the purport of which was, to levy a discriminating duty on the manufactures and vessels of those countries which had no commercial treaties with the United States. These resolutions were aimed against Great Britain, and were intended as a retaliation upon her for the restrictions which existed by virtue of her act of navigation,\* upon the direct intercourse between the United States and the British colonies. Such, at least, was their nominal object; but most probably the resolutions had a political as well as a commercial aim. The motion of Mr Madison brought on a violent and protracted debate. One of the resolutions passed by a small majority. The consideration of the others was postponed; and another subject was taken up, and debated with almost equal violence. This was a bill for providing and arming six frigates, for the protection of American commerce, against the Algerine cruisers. This measure was opposed in every stage of its progress with the greatest pertinacity, but finally passed into a law.

Certain orders in council had been published by the British government, the preceding year, interfering with the trade between America and France. These orders had been remonstrated against; but instead of being annulled, news now arrived that further orders had been issued of a nature still more objectionable. These orders were issued on the principle, that neutrals could not lawfully participate, during war, in any commerce with either of the belligerents, from which they were excluded in time of peace. This was maintained by the British government, to be a principle of the law of nations. But a different opinion prevailed in America; and this attack upon her commerce, made a strong impression throughout the country. War was regarded as the probable result; an embargo for thirty days was laid upon all vessels; certain

\* See p. 30.



harbors were ordered to be fortified; the magazines were replenished with arms and ammunition; and measures were taken for raising a provisional army.

The president, regarding war as the greatest of calamities, and resolved to make one decisive effort for the preservation of peace, notwithstanding the strong opposition to this measure, determined on sending an envoy extraordinary to the British court, to negotiate if possible, the terms of an accommodation. Mr Jay was sent on this mission, and furnished with ample powers to arrange all existing difficulties, and to conclude a treaty of commerce.

Besides the controversies growing out of the non-execution of the original treaty of peace, and the commercial differences above alluded to, there were several other points of serious dispute, as to the respective rights of neutrals and belligerents. It has long been, and remains to this day, a disputed question, what articles are to be considered contraband of war.\* It is equally unsettled whether enemies' property can be protected by a neutral flag. The war at present raging between the sovereigns of Europe, and the French republic, made these questions very interesting both to America and Great Britain. The English, whose predominance at sea was scarcely disputed, desirous of distressing France as much as possible, and not indisposed perhaps, to shackle the rising commerce of America, carried the rights of belligerents to the greatest extent, and limited those of neutrals as much as possible. The Americans, on the other hand, contended for a liberal construction of neutral rights. They were for curtailing the list of contraband articles; and maintained the principle, that free ships made free goods, that is, that all property on board neutral vessels, to whomever it might belong, ought to pass free from seizure and confiscation.

There was still other grievances much and justly urged on the part of the Americans. The British fleet was recruited by forcibly compelling British seamen wherever found, to serve on board the national vessels. This right of impress-

\* By articles contraband of war, are understood articles such as gunpowder, military and naval stores, &c, with which no neutral vessel can supply either of two nations at war with each other, without running the risk of confiscation.

ment was not confined to the shore; but British ships of war were accustomed to stop vessels at sea, to whatever nation they might belong, and to take from them such English sailors as they might have on board, often leaving scarcely hands enough to navigate the vessel. The Americans did not deny the claims of Great Britain to the service of her own subjects; but as the English and Americans spoke the same language, and in many other respects were much alike, this right of impressment was subject to great abuse, and in several instances American citizens had been impressed, and compelled to serve on board the British fleet.

Such, and so various were the disputes, which Mr Jay was appointed to compose and compromise.

At the present session of congress, the official conduct of Mr Hamilton became anew the subject of investigation; but the inquiry terminated much to his honor. So far from embezzling the public funds, that able officer had spent in the public service the greater part of his private fortune. The salary attached to his office was wholly inadequate; he had for some time contemplated a resignation; and early the next year, he retired from office. Influenced by the same motives, general Knox soon after followed his example. Mr Walcott, of Connecticut, succeeded to the treasury, and colonel Pickering was appointed secretary of war.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

Navigation of the Mississippi. — Kentucky remonstrance. — War with the Indians. — Wayne's victory. — Insurrection in Pennsylvania. — President calls out the militia. — Insurrection suppressed. — Jay's treaty. — Its unpopularity. — It is ratified by the President. — Peace of Grenville with the northwestern Indians. — Treaty with Spain. — Treaty with Algiers. — Proceedings in Congress respecting Jay's treaty. — Mr Munroe recalled, and Mr Pinkney appointed envoy to France. — Mr Randolph resigns. — Tennessee admitted into the Union. — Candidates for the presidency. — Mr Adams elected.

FREQUENT efforts had been made, both during the revolutionary war, and since the peace, to negotiate a treaty

with Spain, and to make some arrangements with that nation respecting the navigation of the Mississippi. But jealous of the rising power of the United States, Spain kept aloof from all negotiation; and the discontent of the inhabitants west of the Alleghanies, at being deprived of the navigation of that river, was wrought up to a high pitch.

During the last session of Congress, a remonstrance from the inhabitants of Kentucky was laid before the legislature, which, in an indignant strain, demanded of the government the navigation of the Mississippi; complained that not one real effort had been made to attain it; and seemed to threaten a dismemberment of the union if their demand was not instantly complied with.

This remonstrance was followed up by a set of resolutions in a style equally intemperate, agreed upon at a meeting held at Lexington; and to add to the embarrassments of the government, it was known that an expedition was secretly organizing in the state of Kentucky, under the auspices of M. Genet,\* which had for its object an attack on New Orleans. The governor of Kentucky did not seem much inclined to give any assistance to the general government; but they succeeded without his aid in defeating the enterprise.

In the meantime, the war with the Indians was drawing to a close. After the defeat of St Clair, general Wayne had been appointed to the chief command; and the army had been recruited under the laws passed for that purpose. Negotiations with the Indians were repeatedly tried; but all in vain; and Wayne, confident in the discipline and courage of his troops, resolved to terminate the war by some decisive operation. Towards the end of the preceding summer, he had established himself in an open camp at Grenville, on the upper waters of the great Miami, near the western boundary of Ohio; and had occupied the ground on which St Clair was defeated, where he established a post called fort Recovery.

In the course of the present summer, Wayne penetrated still farther into the Indian country, and established himself at the confluence of the An Glaize, and the Maumee.† About

\* This was just before M. Genet's recall, and is the expedition against Louisiana, alluded to in the last chapter.

† Otherwise known as the Miami of the lakes.

thirty miles down the Maumee, the British had lately built a fort; and in the vicinity of that fort the whole body of the Indian warriors was assembled, to the number of more than 2000. The number of Wayne's regular troops was about the same, and he had in addition 1100 mounted militia. He advanced cautiously down the river; and soon discovered the Indians advantageously posted in a thick wood in front of the British fort. They were drawn up in three lines, and their position was defended by heaps of fallen timber, uprooted in some tornado, which strewed the ground, and rendered the approach of cavalry very difficult. The Americans advanced in two lines; one flank protected by the river, and the other by a body of mounted militia. The Indians kept up a sharp and rapid fire; but the first line, without stopping to return it, pressed on with trailed arms, and pushed the enemy out of his covert at the point of the bayonet. So impetuous was the charge, that the Indians were completely routed, and fled in great disorder. The pursuit was continued two miles through thick woods, and terminated within gunshot of the British fort. Having destroyed the houses and cornfields of the Indians, including those within range of the British guns, general Wayne returned to An Glaize. Detachments were sent out to lay waste the whole Indian country; and forts were erected in the heart of their territory to prevent their return.

In the meantime, the discontents in western Pennsylvania, occasioned by the excise laws, rose to an alarming height. The marshal, who had gone into the disaffected counties to serve processes on certain persons, who had been indicted for disobedience to those laws, was waylaid and fired at, and afterwards taken prisoner by the disaffected. The house of general Nevel, the inspector, was attacked by a body of armed men; and a small party of regular troops, by whom it was defended, was compelled to surrender at discretion. Both the marshal and inspector were obliged to fly the country. To discover those who were opposed to these violent proceedings, the insurgents stopped the mail between Pittsburgh and Philadelphia; broke open the letters; and sent a committee to Pittsburgh to demand the banishment of several persons, who, in corresponding with their friends, had expressed sentiments favorable to the laws.

Having laid these facts before his cabinet, and obtained

from one of the judges a certificate, in the form required by law, that the authority of the government was opposed by combinations too strong to be suppressed by the ordinary course of judicial proceedings, the president issued a proclamation warning the insurgents to desist from opposition to the laws, and made a requisition on the states of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia for their several quotas of militia, to compose an army of 15,000 men ; each division to be immediately organized, and prepared to march at a moment's warning. In the meantime, commissioners were appointed to negotiate with the insurgents on the basis of a general amnesty for past offences, upon a promise of future obedience.

The insurgents had appointed a committee of safety, composed of sixty members, who deputed a sub-committee of fifteen to negotiate with the commissioners. All the more prudent and considerate men among the disaffected, were now seriously alarmed, and the committee of fifteen recommended to the committee of safety the acceptance of the terms proposed by the commissioners. The question of acceptance was vigorously debated, and carried by a small majority ; but the committee, not thinking themselves authorized to settle the question, resolved to refer it to their constituents.

Meanwhile the militia of Virginia and Maryland, assembled at Cumberland, and that of Pennsylvania and Oct. New Jersey, at Bedford. Mr Lee, governor of Virginia, was appointed commander-in-chief, and under him were the governors of Pennsylvania and New Jersey. The army marched in two divisions from the places of rendezvous into the disaffected counties. The greatness of the force prevented the effusion of blood. The insurgents did not venture to embody ; and several of the ring-leaders, who refused to give assurance of future submission, were seized and detained for trial. The troops were soon after withdrawn, except a strong detachment, under general Morgan, which was posted for the winter in the heart of the disaffected counties. Two of the insurgents were tried and found guilty, but through the clemency of the president they received a pardon.

Thus did the prudent vigor of Washington, suppress, without shedding a drop of blood, a dangerous insurrection, which was beginning to spread rapidly, and which, if not

seasonably checked, might have been attended with very alarming consequences. Congress, at their next session, appropriated one million one hundred thousand dollars, to pay the expenses occasioned by this insurrection.

Mr Jay, after encountering a thousand difficulties, and yielding on some points more than his instructions warranted, had succeeded in negotiating a treaty with  
 1795 Great Britain. This treaty arrived in America early in the spring; on the 8th of June it was submitted to the senate, and on the 18th, two thirds of that body, precisely a constitutional majority, advised and consented to its ratification.

The feelings of hostility towards England, which had pervaded the country previous to the appointment of Mr Jay, was by no means allayed by the arrival of the treaty. Even before its contents were known, the party in opposition exerted themselves to the utmost to prejudice the public mind against it; and while the senate was deliberating upon it, with closed doors, a member of that body, whose party zeal was unrestrained by any ordinary obligations, delivered an imperfect and incorrect abstract to the editor of a Philadelphia newspaper. This abstract was no sooner published, than the whole country was in a blaze.

Although the treaty provided for the surrender of the western posts; settled the other disputes growing out of the original treaty of peace; and secured to the inhabitants of the United States, under certain restrictions, a trade with the British possessions in the East and West Indies; yet it omitted all mention of the disputed points of international law, and the rights of neutrals. In truth, the doctrines on these points, held by the two governments, were so entirely at variance, that Mr Jay, content with settling what could be settled, had left some of the chief topics of controversy in the same state of uncertainty in which he found them — and in the same state they have ever since remained.

A treaty so defective in what was looked upon as essential, was condemned in the most sweeping terms. Public meetings were called in almost every town; and petitions to the president not to ratify it, flowed in from every  
 Aug. quarter. But Washington, whose calm and steady spirit was alike unmoved by the sunshine of general applause, and the storm of popular discontent, had

given the treaty deliberate examination, and though he saw and felt its defects, yet satisfied it was the best that could be obtained, and persuaded that peace, even on such terms, was far preferable to war, he determined to ratify it. He did so; the clamor against the treaty gradually subsided; and it is now unanimously acknowledged, that scarcely any act of Washington's administration was wiser or more unexceptionable. A war with England would have swept our commerce from the ocean, and involved us anew in poverty and distress.

The Indians in the northwest had been entirely broken by the defeat they received the last year from general Wayne; and in the month of August, that able officer negotiated a treaty of peace with all the tribes. This peace was made at Grenville; and the surrender of the western posts, which had been so long retained by the British, gave assurance that it would be firm and lasting.

The court of Spain had for some time previous given indications of a disposition more favorable than had hitherto been exhibited. She had been unsuccessful in her war with France; and began to fear lest the people of the western states, in order to secure the navigation of the Mississippi, should take forcible possession of New Orleans. Thomas Pinkney, late ambassador at London, was despatched to Madrid under a special commission, and in October of this year, concluded a treaty, which settled the southern boundary of the United States, and secured to their citizens the free navigation of the Mississippi, and a right of depositing their goods at New Orleans.

At the next session of congress, the house of representatives took the treaty with Great Britain into consideration, and claiming a right to be consulted in the ratification of treaties, and to grant or withhold according to their own judgment, the appropriations necessary to carry them into effect, they requested the president to lay before the house copies of Mr Jay's instructions, and of all other papers connected with the treaty, except such as any pending negotiation might render it improper to disclose. To this request, the president returned a firm but respectful negative; claiming for himself, with the advice and consent of the senate, according to the provisions of the constitution, the exclusive

authority, to negotiate and ratify all treaties with foreign powers.

This refusal was followed by a most violent debate, in which the president was censured in the severest terms; and it seemed to be doubtful whether the house could be prevailed upon, to make the appropriations necessary to carry the treaty into operation. But the prejudices against it were now beginning to subside; the public sentiment seemed to favor the ratification; congress could not refuse to vote the necessary sums without a breach of the public faith; and the appropriations were finally carried by a majority of fiftyone to fortyeight.

Thus were most of the embarrassments, which from the institution of the general government, had perplexed its administration, finally dissipated. The public debt had been funded; a competent revenue provided; a dangerous insurrection suppressed; the Indian wars ended; our neutrality maintained; and the disputes with England and Spain peacefully adjusted.

The relations with France, however, still remained a subject of anxiety. One of the great parties into which the country was divided, seemed still to retain for the French people, all the affection which had once been quite universal. But the party which supported the administration, disgusted by the excesses of the revolution, alarmed at the ambition of the French republic, and not satisfied with the treatment America had received from the new government and its diplomatic agents, had been gradually weaned of their enthusiastic fondness for France. The proclamation of neutrality had been regarded by the French as a violation of the treaty of alliance; they were still further exasperated by the treaty with Great Britain; and under the influence of these feelings, several decrees had been issued, and American vessels had been seized and confiscated, in direct violation of the treaty of commerce. Mr Munroe, our minister at Paris, did not seem to the president to urge the rights of America with sufficient vigor. He was recalled, and Charles C. Pinkney was appointed his successor. It having been accidentally discovered that Mr Randolph, the secretary of state, had made communications to M. Adet, the French minister, which in the opinion of the president were highly improper,



he had, some time before, resigned his office, and had been succeeded by Mr Pickering.\*

TENNESSEE was this year admitted into the union. Fort Loudon on the river Tennessee, had been built in 1756; but no permanent settlements were made till 1768. The early settlers suffered much from wars with the Indians; and the country was afterwards a good deal distracted by internal disputes. Efforts were made to erect an independent state by the name of Frankland; but these attempts did not succeed, and the settlements remained a part of North Carolina till 1790, when they were ceded to the United States, and became known as the *Territory southwest of the Ohio*. From this period the population increased with great rapidity, and the territory was now erected into a state and admitted into the union.

Washington having announced, in his farewell address to the people of the United States, his intention Sept. to retire from public life, the choice of his successor immediately became a subject of great public interest. The federalists supported John Adams and Thomas Pinkney, as candidates for the presidency and vice presidency; the whole strength of the opposite party was drawn out to support Mr Jefferson. As the constitution originally stood,† each elector voted for two candidates, without specifying which he intended for president, or which for vice president; and the candidate who received the highest number of votes, provided it was a majority of the whole, was elected to the first office, and he who received the next highest number, to the second. Under this provision, the federalists succeeded in raising Mr Adams to the presidency; but Mr Jefferson was chosen vice president.

\* The place was offered to Patrick Henry, of Virginia, the celebrated orator; but he was induced by domestic considerations to decline it.

† In 1804, the constitution was amended, and a different provision was made.

## CHAPTER XX.

State of affairs with France. — Mr Pinkney not received. — Mission of Pinkney, Gerry and Marshall. — Treaty with France annulled. — Reception of the American envoys. — Preparations for war. — Naval engagements. — Mission of Ellsworth, Davie and Murray. — Convention with France. — Death of Washington. — Seat of government removed to the District of Columbia. — Canvass for the Presidency. — Mr Marshall secretary of State. — Courts of the United States reorganized.

THE new president was scarcely inaugurated before he found himself obliged to assemble congress by  
 1797 proclamation, to deliberate on the state of affairs between France and the United States. M. Adet, the French minister, had been recalled ; and when Mr Pinkney, the successor of Mr Monroe, arrived at Paris, the French directory refused to receive him, and ordered him to quit without delay, the territories of the republic. On giving Mr Munroe his audience of leave, the president of the directory addressed him in a speech, in which the most flattering expressions of regard for the people were mingled with insulting reflections on the government of the United States ; and to complete this system of hostility, American vessels were everywhere captured by French cruisers, and condemned in the admiralty courts, under pretence that they were not furnished with a document, which it had been uniformly understood was dispensed with by the treaty of commerce.

Earnestly desiring to maintain peace, the president re-appointed Mr Pinkney, together with Elbridge Gerry and John Marshall, joint envoys to negotiate, if possible, the terms of an accommodation. But in the meantime, congress passed an act, declaring that the treaties with France, inasmuch as they had been repeatedly violated by her, were no longer binding on the United States.

The new commissioners having arrived in France, were treated but little better than Mr Pinkney had been, while sole envoy. Though permitted to reside at Paris, they were not accredited as public ministers ; but were nevertheless beset by agents of the directory, who plainly insinuated, that a grant of money to France, and generous pres-

ents to the individual directors, might open the way for an accommodation. 'Millions for defence,' said Mr Pinkney, 'but not one cent for tribute.' Pinkney and Marshall were next solicited to resign their commissions, and when they refused, were ordered to leave the country; Mr Gerry, whose sentiments were thought more favorable to France, was permitted to remain; and after the departure of his colleagues, was invited to renew the negotiation. This, however, he declined to do.

When the news of these events arrived in America, they excited every where a lively indignation. Both  
 1798 parties united to repel the insults offered to their country in the person of its envoys; all commercial intercourse with France was suspended; twelve regiments were added to the peace establishment; and the president was authorized to raise a provisional army of 10,000 men. Washington was appointed lieutenant general and commander-in-chief, not only of the provisional army, but of all the other forces of the United States. A navy department was created; provision was made for increasing the number of public vessels; and merchant ships were authorized to protect themselves against the French cruisers. This state of things continued nearly a year; and two sharp naval actions took place in the West Indies. The *Constellation*, of 38 guns, commanded by commodore Truxton, met and captured the French frigate *l'Insurgent*, a vessel of superior force. In a subsequent action, *Truxton* compelled *La Vengeance*, a fifty gun ship, to strike her colors, but night came on, and she succeeded in escaping.

The directory now discovered that they had gone too far. They had no intention of involving themselves  
 1799 in a war with America, and the show of vigor and spirit on the part of the United States, caused them to change their tone. Intimations were conveyed through Mr Murray, the American minister in Holland, of a disposition to treat; and Mr Murray, together with Oliver Ellsworth and William R. Davie,\* were appointed by the president, commissioners for that purpose. This proceed-

\* Patrick Henry had been previously appointed, but he died before the envoys were ready to embark, and general Davie was nominated in his place.

ing was exceedingly unpopular with a portion of the federal party, who contended that America had already done enough, and that the first advances towards a reconciliation ought to come from France. The president was unwilling to sacrifice the peace of the country to a point of etiquette. But notice was given to the French government that the newly appointed envoys would not embark, unless upon explicit assurance that they should be received with the respect appertaining to their public character. These assurances were given, and the envoys proceeded on their mission. When they arrived in France, they found the directory fallen, and the government in the hands of Napoleon Bonaparte. After considerable negotiation, they succeeded in concluding a convention, in September of the following year — by which the United States were released from the obligations of the treaty of alliance, on condition that they relinquished all claims on the French government for spoliation on American commerce, committed prior to the date of the convention.

Washington did not live to see the peace concluded. He died on the 14th of December, after a short and sudden, but violent illness. The news of his death spread a universal gloom; every mark of respect, which gratitude and veneration could devise, was paid to his memory; and it was evident that he died as he had lived, pre-eminent in the confidence and affections of his countrymen.

In the summer of 1800, the public offices were removed from Philadelphia to Washington; and in the month 1800 of November, congress assembled for the first time in that city.

The canvass for the next presidency, was already very warm. Two acts had been passed in 1798, when the difficulties with France were at their height, commonly known as the *alien and sedition acts*, — the first of which authorized the president to order out of the country any alien, whose residence in it he might think dangerous, — the other provided for punishing the publishers of seditious and defamatory articles, which might tend to bring discredit on the government and its officers. These acts, as well as those for augmenting the army and navy, and indeed the whole conduct of the administration in the controversy with France, were the subjects of incessant attack on Mr Adams and his

administration. The president attempted to propitiate his opponents by dismissing Mr Pickering, the secretary of state, and appointing Mr Marshall his successor.\* But he was too unpopular to gain favor by such expedients, and the friends of Mr Jefferson grew stronger every day.

At the last session of congress, during Mr Adams' administration, an act was passed, not without a very  
 1801 violent opposition, reorganizing the courts of the United States; and on the last day of his presidency, he appointed, under this act, twelve new judges.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

Mr Jefferson elected president. — Reduction of the army and navy. — Repeal of Mr Adams' judiciary act. — Ohio admitted into the Union. — Purchase of Louisiana. — Expedition of Lewis and Clarke. — War with Tripoli. — The Philadelphia taken — Destroyed by Decatur. — Tripoli bombarded. — Sidi Jousouf, Bashaw of Tripoli. — Eaton's arrangement with Hamet. — Derne taken. — Treaty with Tripoli. — Trial of colonel Burr.

MR JEFFERSON and Mr Burr were the candidates of the republican party for the offices of president and vice president. On examining the returns, it appeared that both had received a greater number of votes than either of the federal candidates, and both the same number. As the constitution then stood,† it remained for the house of representatives to assign the presidency to one of these two candidates; the vice presidency belonging of right to the other.

The house of representatives proceeded to ballot; but a difficulty again occurred; for the same number of votes was thrown for both candidates. This situation of affairs

\* Mr Pickering and Mr Marshall were both federalists; but Mr Pickering was thought to carry the principles of the party to a greater extreme than his successor. Mr Marshall not long afterwards was appointed Chief Justice of the United States, which office he still continues to fill with great ability.

† See note, p. 171.

was brought about by the management of the federalists. Although unable to sustain their own candidate, they still hoped to defeat the favorite object of their adversaries, and to raise Mr Burr over the head of Mr Jefferson. The ballot went round thirtyfive times, always with the same result. But at the thirtysixth trial, the federalists of one or two states gave way, and Mr Jefferson was elected president.

At the next session of congress, the republican party began to carry into operation several of their favorite doctrines. Economy became the order of the day. The army and navy were reduced; the excise duty, and other internal taxes were repealed; the judiciary was restored to the footing on which it had stood before the late act for its reorganization; and the new judges appointed by Mr Adams were thus deprived of their offices. The members of Mr Jefferson's cabinet, were James Madison, secretary of state, Albert Gallatin, secretary of the treasury, Henry Dearborn, secretary of war, Robert Smith, secretary of the navy, and Levi Lincoln, attorney general.

This year, the state of Ohio was admitted into the union. The first settlement within the limits of this state was made at Marietta, in 1788, by a party of emigrants from Massachusetts, under the guidance of general Putnam. At this time, Ohio formed a part of the Northwest Territory. Its progress was slow till after the peace with the Indians, in 1795. Since that period its population has increased with remarkable rapidity.

In 1803, the territory of the United States was more than doubled in extent by the purchase of Louisiana.

1803 This vast territory, comprising all that part of the United States west of Mississippi, after remaining in the possession of Spain since 1763,\* was receded, in the year 1800, to France. This cession was kept secret till after the peace of Amiens, in 1802. When it became known, it excited the most lively alarm in the minds of the American government. The free navigation of the Mississippi was essential to the growth and prosperity of the western states. While the Spaniards possessed Louisiana, they had never ceased to interrupt and embarrass the trade of the river; and the Americans had of late been prohibited from

\* See chap. VIII.

depositing their goods at New Orleans, notwithstanding that right was secured to them by treaty. The enterprise and ambition of France would be still more dangerous; and Mr Jefferson contemplated a war, and an alliance with England, rather than permit the French to take possession of their newly acquired province.

But the peace of Amiens was not of long continuance; and after the renewal of war in Europe, Bonaparte despaired of defending so distant a possession as Louisiana against the naval power of England. Besides, he wanted money; and after a good deal of discussion about the price, Messrs Livingston and Munroe succeeded in negotiating a treaty, by which Louisiana was ceded to the United States for fifteen millions of dollars. Two millions and a half of this sum were to be retained to satisfy the claims of the American merchants for spoliations committed by the government of France.

The appropriations to complete this purchase were opposed by the whole strength of the federal party. The compact was branded as a mere contrivance to bestow fifteen millions upon France; and the idea of extending the territory of a country so large and so thinly peopled as the United States, was denounced as dangerous and absurd. But undoubtedly this purchase was one of the wisest acts of Mr Jefferson's public life. It secured to the United States the whole extent of the Mississippi, from its source to its mouth; quieted forever the fears of the western states, whose prosperity was no longer dependent upon the caprice of a foreign power; and averted the danger, by no means slight or distant, of a foreign and hostile nation being planted along the numerous rivers, and among the fertile prairies of the west.

The following year, the southern part of the ceded country was erected into the territory of Orleans; and Messrs Lewis and Clark, two officers of the army, with a party of soldiers, a botanist, and other attendants, were sent to explore the new and unknown regions of the north and west. They ascended the Missouri to its sources; crossed the Rocky mountains; descended the river Columbia to its mouth; and after a journey of twentyeight months, arrived on the shores of the Pacific ocean. Lieutenant Pike was employed, about the same time, to explore the upper courses of the Mississippi; and from this period the extensive regions of the west began to be better known.

A war had existed with Tripoli since 1802, and one or two naval actions had taken place between American vessels and Tripolitan cruisers. This year, commodore Preble was sent into the Mediterranean with a squadron of seven ships. As captain Bainbridge, in the frigate Philadelphia, was reconnoitring the bay of Tripoli, and was in rapid pursuit of a small vessel, his ship struck on a sunken rock, and all attempts to get her afloat were unavailing. She was soon surrounded by the Tripolitan gun-boats; and the crew were obliged to surrender. The officers were treated as prisoners of war; but the men, according to the custom of the Tripolitans, were reduced to slavery.

The Philadelphia was moored in the harbor of Tripoli; but the officers of the navy were impatient to repair this disaster; and lieutenant Decatur conceived the daring enterprise of retaking or destroying the captured  
1804 vessel. He sailed from Syracuse in a small schooner, with a crew of seventysix men; entered the harbor of Tripoli under a neutral flag; ran his vessel alongside the frigate; sprang on board with his party; and soon overpowered the Tripolitan crew. A heavy fire was immediately opened on the Philadelphia from the batteries on shore, and the other ships in the harbor. Decatur set fire to her, and sailed out the harbor in his own vessel; not one of his men were killed, and only four were wounded. In the course of the summer, Tripoli was several times bombarded; and many bold and gallant deeds reflected honor on the officers and men of the American squadron.

The war against Tripoli was not confined to the sea. Sidi Joussouf, the reigning bashaw, had attained  
1805 that dignity by the murder of his father, and the banishment of Hamet, his elder brother. The exiled chief had found a refuge among the Mamaluke beys of Upper Egypt; and William Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, a man of a romantic and enterprising turn, undertook to seek him out, and to engage him in an attempt to recover his paternal dominions. Hamet listened to the proposals of Eaton, and a body of men, principally Arabs, was assembled at Alexandria. Eaton was appointed to the chief command; and leaving Alexandria, he commenced his march through the deserts of northern Africa.

After a progress of fifty days, and 600 miles, during which



his followers suffered incredible hardships from hunger, thirst and fatigue, Eaton arrived at Dernè, the most easterly town of Tripoli. He carried this place by assault; and was soon after attacked by a much superior force, which he succeeded in repelling. He sustained another attack with equal success; but the expedition was cut short by a treaty between the United States and Tripoli. By the provisions of this treaty, sixty thousand dollars were paid to the bashaw; the officers and crew of the Philadelphia were released; and the American government relinquished the cause of Hamet.\*

In the year 1807, the public mind was much excited by the arrest and trial of colonel Burr, on a charge of high treason. After the contest for the presidency, which terminated in the choice of Mr Jefferson, colonel Burr lost entirely the confidence of the democratic party. Being a man of talents and ambition, and having numerous personal friends, he attempted to retrieve his political importance, and offered himself as a candidate for the office of governor of New York. He hoped to carry the election by the assistance of the federal party; but the influence of Mr Hamilton, who disliked his character, and distrusted his motives, deprived him of many votes, and defeated his election. Exasperated at this defeat, he sent Hamilton a challenge. It was accepted; and Hamilton fell at the first, fire mortally wounded. Burr was now denounced by the federalists as the murderer of Hamilton, and found himself at war with both the great parties by which the country was divided. Thus situated, he is supposed, (for the subject still remains a matter of much obscurity), to have engaged in an enterprise for dissevering the union, and establishing an independent nation west of the Alleghanies. But the circumstances which were disclosed at his trial seem rather to indicate an expedition against the provinces of Mexico. Burr was acquitted on the charge of

\*Hamet complained that in this business, he was unfairly treated. The only provision for his benefit, which the treaty contained, was an article, by which the reigning bashaw agreed to release Hamet's wife and children. But a secret clause was annexed to the treaty, which rendered this article a mere mockery. By the secret clause, Sidi was to be allowed *four years* to carry into effect the article in favor of his brother. Hamet afterwards came to this country, and presented a petition to Congress for remuneration and redress; but without effect.

treason; but his fortune, character and influence were annihilated; and for many years subsequent he resided abroad.\*

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

Flourishing state of American commerce. — Depredations renewed. — Berlin decree. — Impressment of American seamen. — Affair of the Chesapeake — Proclamation of the president. — Admiral Berkeley recalled. — British orders in council. — Milan decree. — Embargo. — Its unpopularity in the eastern states. — Decree of Bayonne. — Non-intercourse acts. — Mr Madison president. — Erskine's treaty. — Not ratified. — Mr Jackson. — Decree of Rambouillet. — Act of May, 1810. — Alleged repeal of the Berlin and Milan decrees. — Reparation for the attack on the Chesapeake. — Refusal of the British government to revoke the orders in council. — Affair of the Little Belt. — Battle of Tippecanoe. — War declared against Great Britain. — Orders in council revoked. — Louisiana admitted into the Union.

DURING the wars in Europe, which were caused by the French revolution, the commerce of America increased to a surprising and unexpected degree. The Americans were, in fact, the only neutral nation; and the carrying trade of a large part of Europe fell into their hands. The neutrality of the United States was the source of great wealth, and the true foundation of their prosperity; but it was, nevertheless, attended by many difficulties and embarrassments; and during the next eight years, the country paid a high price for its preceding prosperity.

It was, indeed, a very unfortunate circumstance, that the two great political parties which divided America, had become, as it were, the respective partizans of Britain, and of France. So that the flagrant insults which these haughty rivals alternately inflicted upon the United States, though too gross to be openly defended, found not unfrequently, even among the American people, laborious and zealous apologists.

\*He has since returned to America, and now lives in great retirement in the city of New York.

From the commencement of the European war, there never was a time that depredations were not committed upon the commerce of America, by one or other of the belligerent nations. Jay's treaty with Great Britain, and the convention of 1800 with France, procured an interval of comparative security; but the outrages of these rival nations were about to be renewed on a scale still more extensive.

The commercial part of the treaty with Great Britain expired by its own limitation, in 1804. Mr Munroe, and Mr Pinkney, of Maryland, were appointed joint envoys to procure a new arrangement; and in December, 1806, a treaty more favorable, on the whole, than any we have obtained from Great Britain before or since, was signed by the American plenipotentiaries, and by lords Holland and Auckland, on the part of the British ministry. The president, without consulting the senate, refused to ratify this treaty; — principally on the ground that it did not contain any effectual provisions against the impressment of American seamen. Our commerce, so far as Great Britain was concerned, was thus left unprotected by any diplomatic arrangements; and the convention of 1800 with France began, soon after, to be most grossly violated by the emperor Napoleon.

In the course of the European war, Bonaparte had obtained an undoubted mastery by land. Holland, Italy, and a large part of Prussia had been subdued, and erected into dependent kingdoms. Austria, Spain, and the nations on the Baltic were in close league with Bonaparte, and in fact, rather his servants than his allies; and Russia soon after became his friend. But the command of the English over the seas, rivalled Bonaparte's empire on the land. The united fleets of France and Spain had been annihilated at the battle of Trafalgar; and all the principal ports of the French empire, and sometimes a long extent of coast, were held in vigorous blockade.

Bonaparte contended that the British carried the laws of maritime warfare to an unwarrantable and piratical extent.\*

\* The disregard of neutral rights, and in particular, the unwarrantable extension of the doctrine of blockades, was a subject of constant complaint on the part of the American minister, at the court of London. The British, at one time, declared the whole coast of Prussia, an extent of 600 miles, to be under blockade. By the laws of war, neutral vessels are excluded from blockaded ports

By way of retaliation, he not only aggravated the severities of warfare on the land, — but unable to reach the British isles with his armies, — he conceived a new plan of attack, to which he gave the name of the *Continental System*. This was a scheme for cutting off all intercourse between Europe and Great Britain; and by annihilating the commerce of England, to dry up the sources of her power.

He commenced this system shortly after the battle of Jena, — in which he had totally defeated the army of Prussia, — by issuing from the city of Berlin, the capital of his enemy, on the 21st of November, 1806, his famous *Berlin Decree*. Among other matters, the whole British islands were declared to be in a state of blockade; and it was provided, that no vessel coming from England or her colonies was to enter any French port, on pain of forfeiture. If this decree was to be considered as extending to American vessels, it was an obvious and flagrant violation of neutral rights; since neutrals have always been privileged to trade to and from such ports and countries, as suit their own convenience. But Mr Armstrong, our minister at Paris, regarded this edict, for some time, as a mere municipal regulation; it was generally so regarded; and though several American vessels were seized, no condemnations took place till November, 1807; nearly a year after the decree was promulgated.\*

The indignation which the extension of the Berlin decree to the commerce of America, might justly have excited, was in some measure neutralized, and the current of public feeling diverted, by an event which had happened a few months previously in our own waters. The question of impressment had not been settled by Jay's treaty, and had ever since remained a subject of negotiation. In 1803, Rufus King, at that time the representative of the American government at the court of London, had nearly concluded a convention, very advantageous to the United States, by which all impressment on the high seas was prohibited; but

\* The seizures made by Bonaparte and his allies, under this and subsequent decrees, became the foundations of the *claims* of American merchants, about which so much has been said and written, on France, Spain, Holland, Naples and Denmark. The Spanish and Danish claims have been paid or compromised. The others, though very justly due, remain unsettled.

the British minister finally refused to sign the treaty, unless the narrow seas\* were excepted from its operation. The arrangement was thus frustrated; our vessels remained exposed to the visits of British cruisers; and though it had never been pretended that national vessels were subject to this pretended right of search, America did not escape even this indignity.

The British maintained a squadron, which cruised along the coast of the United States, and plundered American commerce, under pretence of enforcing belligerent rights. Three seamen had deserted from this  
1807 squadron, and were said to have enlisted in the American navy. A demand for these men was made at Washington, but without success. The deserters had shipped on board the frigate *Chesapeake*, then lying in Hampton roads, and commanded by commodore Barron. As the *Chesapeake* was proceeding to sea, she was followed by the *Leopard* of fifty guns, one of several British ships of war then lying in the bay. The *Chesapeake* lay to, till the *Leopard* came up; when the captain of the latter vessel sent a message on board the *Chesapeake*, demanding the three deserters, in conformity with certain orders of admiral Berkeley, who commanded on the American station, which were sent inclosed. Barron replied, that he knew of no such men as the captain of the *Leopard* described; and that he had orders not to permit his crew to be mustered by any one except himself or his officers. Upon this, the *Leopard* ranged alongside the *Chesapeake*, and commenced a furious cannonade. As Barron had no expectation of encountering an enemy so near home, he was totally unprepared for action. After sustaining the fire of the *Leopard* for twenty minutes, during which three of his men were killed and eighteen wounded, he struck his colors, — without having fired a single gun, — and sent a lieutenant on board the *Leopard*, to say that he considered the *Chesapeake* her prize. No answer was sent to this message; but an officer from the *Leopard* soon came on board the *Chesapeake*, and having mustered her crew, took away the three deserters, and one other man said to have deserted from a merchant

\* The English channel and other seas by which Great Britain is surrounded.

vessel.\* Barron called a council of his officers; and after consulting with them, returned to Hampton roads. The commander of the Chesapeake was afterwards tried by a court martial for his conduct on this occasion. The court acquitted him of several other charges, but found him guilty of negligence in the equipment of his vessel, and suspended him from command for five years.

This scandalous outrage upon a national vessel, excited the indignation of the whole country; and if war had been immediately declared, the opinion in favor of it would have been almost unanimous. But the president contented himself with issuing a proclamation, commanding all British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States, and with sending orders to our minister at London, to suspend all negotiations with Great Britain, till reparation was made for this insult. The entire abolition of impressment on the high seas, was to be insisted on, as a security against future aggression; and no arrangement was to be made, which did not include this provision.

The British ministers instantly disavowed the orders issued by admiral Berkeley, and he was recalled from his command. But they refused to make the abolition of impressment on the high seas, a part of the reparation demanded; they complained of the proclamation of the president as an act of hostility; and soon after appointed admiral Berkeley to a command more honorable than that from which they had recalled him. The negotiation was transferred to America; and the next year Mr Rose came to Washington as envoy from Great Britain. But his powers were very limited, and he accomplished nothing.

In the meantime, the British government issued their famous *Orders in council*, in retaliation of Bonaparte's Berlin decree. By these orders, all direct trade from America to any part of Europe, at war with Great Britain, or which excluded the British flag, was totally prohibited. A provision, however, was made, by which goods might be landed in England, and after paying

\* Three of these men, it was afterwards discovered, were American citizens, who had been pressed into the British service, and who took the earliest opportunity of escaping from it. The fourth was tried, and executed as a British deserter.

a duty, be reexported to Europe. The orders in council were issued in November; and in December they were followed by Bonaparte's *Milan decree*, by which every vessel that should submit to be searched by a British man of war, or which should touch at a British port, or should pay any impost whatever to the British government, was declared to be *denationalized*, and subject to seizure and condemnation.

By this series of wicked and unjust edicts, the neutral trade of America was entirely ruined. If the vessels of the United States went to France, without first touching at a British port, they were liable to capture by the British cruisers; — if they touched at a British port, they were certain of confiscation as soon as they arrived in France. Neither nation pretended to justify its decrees on any other ground than that of retaliation. But under pretence of retaliating on their enemy, they did not scruple to ruin all neutral commerce; and to bring poverty and distress upon thousands of inoffensive individuals, the subjects of a state at peace with both belligerents. Bonaparte boasted himself the champion of free trade and neutral rights; — those very rights which he did not hesitate to destroy, under pretence of vindicating. The British averred that they were fighting for the liberties of the world, and were the last remaining barrier against the far spread despotism of the French emperor. Under such magnanimous pretences did Bonaparte and the British ministers vie with each other, in heaping injuries and indignities on a people, whom they thought too weak, — perhaps not spirited enough — to resent them. The decrees of both nations were equally unjust, but those of England were the most severely felt. Bonaparte could seize only those vessels within the ports and harbors under his control. But the British cruisers swept every sea; and even the bays along our own coast were narrowly watched by these insolent intruders.

The measure resorted to by the American government, as a defence against these aggressions, and a means to procure relief, was a general embargo, by which all intercourse between the United States and foreign countries was entirely prohibited. This law was passed in December; and it was hoped that the distress expected to be produced in England and France by the cessation of inter-

course with America, would induce one, or both those nations to annul its obnoxious decrees.

But the operation of this law was more severely felt at home than abroad. The business of the commercial cities was suddenly at a stand; and in 1808 the eastern states particularly, large numbers of people were deprived of their accustomed means of support. The act was very much criticised, as needlessly severe, since there was some foreign trade which might as well have been spared, with countries dependent neither on England nor France. And the eastern states complained that there was no equality in its operation: They were a trading people, and suffered most severely from this prohibition of all trade; while other parts of the country felt scarcely any annoyance. The operation of the embargo on the belligerents was by no means, such as had been anticipated. They did not appear to feel any considerable inconvenience from it. Indeed Bonaparte could have no very serious objection to an act that coincided so well with his favorite continental system; and Britain was not unwilling to have the trade of the world, which she had for a long time shared only with America, left wholly in her own hands.

However, Napoleon did not let slip so good an opportunity for enriching himself by the plunder of American merchants. In April, he promulgated the *decree of Bayonne*, by which all American vessels then in France, or which should arrive there, were ordered to be seized and sold for the benefit of the government. The pretence for this decree was, that as during the embargo, no American vessel could lawfully navigate the ocean, all vessels apparently American, must be, in reality, British property. But there were many American vessels lawfully abroad, having left the country before the embargo. And besides, this was a mere municipal law. Such vessels as disregarded it, though liable to be confiscated by their own government, committed no offence against France; and the seizure of vessels under this decree was no better than a wholesale robbery.

The embargo was so extremely unpopular; its violations were so open and flagrant; and the impossibility 1809 of enforcing it in the eastern states, without the



aid of a military force, became so apparent that, on the 1st of March it was repealed, and an act for prohibiting all intercourse with France or Great Britain was substituted in its place.

Mr Jefferson had declined another election; and Mr Madison, late secretary of state was chosen his successor. The new cabinet consisted of Robert Smith, of Maryland, secretary of state, Albert Gallatin, secretary of the treasury, William Eustis, of Massachusetts, secretary of war, Paul Hamilton of South Carolina, secretary of the navy, and Cæsar A. Rodney, of Delaware, attorney general.

In April of this year, Mr Erskine, the British minister resident at Washington, concluded a treaty with the American government, which for a little while promised to dissipate the gloomy prospects of commercial affairs. By this treaty, the British orders in council were to be revoked, after the 10th day of the following June; and at the same time the non-intercourse act, was to cease to have any operation, so far as Britain was concerned. Mr Erskine also offered such reparation for the attack on the Chesapeake, as the president thought proper to accept; and a proclamation was issued for reviving intercourse with Great Britain.

But the British cabinet refused to accord to this arrangement, on the ground that Mr Erskine had exceeded his instructions, and he was recalled. A short and angry correspondence took place between Mr Smith, secretary of state, and Mr Jackson, the new minister, on the subject of Mr Erskine's instructions. Mr Jackson was recalled at the request of the American government; and the attempt at reconciliation which promised so fairly, tended only to aggravate the hostile feelings of the two nations.

In March, of the next year, the United States suffered anew from the rapacity and injustice of Bonaparte. By the *decree of Rambouillet*, which was alleged to be in retaliation of the non-intercourse act, all vessels of the United States which since the 20th of March, 1808, had entered any French port, or the ports of any French colony, or of any country occupied by the French, or which should thereafter enter, were declared forfeit, and were to be sold for the benefit of the French

treasury. Besides the condemnations under this decree, the French privateers, unable to keep the sea against the British, had scarcely any other employment than cowardly and piratical depredations on American commerce.

The provisions of the non-intercourse act being about to expire, congress passed a new act by which it was provided, that if either of the belligerent nations would repeal her obnoxious acts, and the other did not, within three months after, repeal hers, that then commercial intercourse should be continued with the nation repealing, while the provisions of the non-intercourse act should revive against the delinquent nation.

Mr Armstrong gave notice of the passage of this act to the French government; and M. de Champagny, duke of Cadore, the French minister of foreign affairs, soon after assured him, that the Berlin and Milan decrees were repealed; and would cease to have any operation against the United States, after the first of the following November, provided America would cause her right to be respected by Great Britain. This alleged repeal was attended with several embarrassing circumstances. No decree of repeal was exhibited; and in a report on neutral rights, made by the French minister of justice, the repeal was not noticed. Captures continued to be made under the original decrees; and though no condemnations took place, the causes were carried by appeal to Paris, and kept pending there, attended with great expense.

However, the American government acted on the strength of M. de Champagny's declaration, and called on the British ministers to revoke their orders in council. But they resisted the demand, on the ground that no sufficient evidence was furnished, that the Berlin and Milan decrees had actually been repealed; and American vessels of great value continued to be seized by the British cruisers, and condemned in their admiralty courts.

In March, 1811, the provisions of the non-intercourse act were revived against Great Britain. Mr Foster came out as envoy from the British government; but he effected nothing except the settlement of the affair of the Chesapeake. The government finally accepted the terms agreed upon by Mr Erskine. They consisted

in a renewed disavowal of the orders issued by admiral Berkeley; the restoration of the men; and a pecuniary compensation to the wounded, and the families of the slain.

Among other ships of the British squadron, which hovered on the American coast, and permitted scarcely a single vessel to pass unexamined, was a brig called the *Little Belt*. During the night of the 11th of May, this vessel fell in with the American frigate, *President*. It was quite dark; the ships hailed each other, and a cannonade began, which killed eleven of the *Little Belt's* men, wounded twentyone, and soon compelled her to strike her colors. The crews of each vessel most positively averred that their adversary gave the first fire; and the two nations, as might be expected, gave entire credit to the statement of their own people.

To add to the embarrassments of the American government, the frontiers seemed likely to be visited by an Indian war. Tecumseh, a chief of the Shawanee tribe, was a man of great talents and ambition. He had a brother, usually called the Prophet, of less abilities than himself, but as he pretended to supernatural powers, possessing even greater influence over his superstitious countrymen. These two chiefs, desiring to put a stop to further encroachments on their hunting grounds, and relying on promises of assistance, received from the governor of Canada, had for some time past, been occupied, in forming an alliance among all the tribes of the northwest. The frontier settlers became seriously alarmed; and the movements of the Indians seemed to indicate approaching hostilities.

To demand an explanation, and to put a stop to their hostile proceedings, general Harrison, the governor of Indiana territory, with a regiment of regular troops, and a body of militia, commenced a march towards the Prophet's town, situated on Vermilion river, a branch of the Wabash. He had reached the Tippecanoe,\* and was within a few miles of the Prophet's town, when the principal chiefs came out with offers of peace and submission, and requested that he would encamp for the night, as it was then too late to enter upon business. Harrison granted their request; but the troops did not encamp without due preparations against surprise.

\* Another branch of the Wabash.

This precaution proved by no means superfluous. Nov. 7 For about four o'clock the next morning, the camp was furiously attacked by a large body of Indians, who were not repulsed without great exertions, and the loss of 180 men in killed and wounded. The loss of the Indians was much greater. Harrison marched forward, destroyed the Prophet's town, and established such forts as seemed necessary for the protection of the frontier. But the Indians still maintained in a hostile attitude; and the probability of a war was daily increasing.

The non-intercourse act had now, for some time, been revived against Great Britain; but it produced no 1812 change in her policy. The last decisive step remained to be taken; and on the 18th of June, congress passed an act, by which war was declared against that nation.

Soon after the declaration of war, news arrived that the orders in council had been repealed. In the beginning of May, a formal decree, repealing the Berlin and Milan decrees, had been communicated, by the French government, to Mr Barlow, our minister at Paris. This decree bore date, the 28th of April, 1811. No explanation was given why a knowledge of its existence had been so long withheld from the American government; nor has it been ascertained to this day, whether the date was a true or a false one. On the 20th of May, this decree was communicated to the British ministry; and on the 23d of June, an order issued repealing the orders in council.

But the arrival of this news made no essential alteration in the state of affairs. Besides the orders, America had other wrongs which remained unredressed; the British would not relinquish the practice of impressments; and proposals for an armistice, made by Mr Russell to the British ministry, and by admiral Warren to the American government, failed of any success.

A few months preceding the declaration of war, the territory of Orleans was erected into an independent state, by the name of LOUISIANA, and admitted into the union.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

War commenced under unfavorable circumstances. — Preparations for the invasion of Canada. — Campaign of 1813. — Hull's surrender. — He is succeeded by general Harrison. — Battle of the river Raisin. — Massacre of prisoners. — Battle of Queenstown. — General Smyth. — Naval affairs. — Success of the American frigates. — Session of congress. — Re-election of Mr Madison. — Commissioners for negotiating a peace. — Taxes. — Blockade of the coast. — Admiral Cockburn. — Naval Engagements. — Creek war. — Battle of the Great Bend. — Submission of the southern Indians. — Affairs on the Niagara frontier. — York taken. — Sackett's harbor attacked. — Battle of Stony Creek. — Battle of the Beaver dams. — Wilkinson's invasion of Canada. — Newark burned. — Desolation of the Niagara frontier. — Affairs of the northwest. — Siege of fort Meigs — Of fort Stevenson. — Perry's victory on Lake Erie. — Advance of Harrison. — Battle of the Thames. — Peace with the northwestern Indians.

MANY disadvantageous circumstances attended the commencement of this second war against Great Britain. It is true, the population had more than doubled,\* and the resources of the country were in every respect far greater than at the beginning of the revolutionary struggle. But thirty years of peace left the United States with few officers who had seen service; and those few passed the vigor of life, and verging fast to the languor and imbecility of old age. The evil effects of the policy pursued by Mr Jefferson with regard to the army and navy, were now severely felt. And after the war was declared, the means of carrying it on with vigor and success were yet to be provided.

For several years preceding, the military peace establishment had stood at 3000 men; and the little navy, whose gallant achievements have become the pride and boast of the country, consisted, at the commencement of the war, of only twenty vessels, — ten frigates, and ten of smaller size. The government had entertained an idea that the coast might be defended by flotillas of gun-boats; and over 150 vessels of this sort had been provided at a heavy expense. But they proved on experiment to be of very little utility. A short time before the declaration of war, congress voted to fill up the ranks of the existing army to 6000 men, and to enlist, in addition, 25,000 regular troops.

\* It was now about eight millions.

They authorized the president to accept the services of 50,000 volunteers, and to call upon the governors of the several states, for detachments of militia, to the amount of 100,000 men, to be apportioned among the states, according to the militia returns. But troops voted, as the country has more than once experienced, are very different from troops enlisted, drilled and disciplined; and the reliance put upon the services of volunteers and militia, turned out, with a few exceptions, to be very much misplaced.

The depredations of the French and English cruisers, the embargo and the non-intercourse, had impoverished and embittered the commercial part of the union; and the maritime states, as they had been little pleased with the preceding measures of government, so, for the most part, they were decidedly opposed to the declaration of war. This opposition originated in the dread of losing their remaining commerce; and in the apprehension that the fisheries would be interrupted; a large portion of the people deprived of their usual means of subsistence; and the towns and villages on the coast plundered and destroyed. These gloomy apprehensions were in some measure realized; but the dread of an alliance with France, which had great weight with the opposition, and which was always before their eyes, whenever a declaration of war against Great Britain was talked of, proved in the event to be quite chimerical.

The act declaring war, passed the house, by a vote of seventynine to fortynine, and the senate by a vote of nineteen to thirteen. It was no sooner approved by the president, than a party was organized, including by far the greater part of the federalists, with some additional members, which took the name of the *peace party*. This party endeavored to compel the government to make peace, by raising every possible obstruction to the prosecution of the war. Their intention was no doubt good; yet as the country was actually involved in war, it seems to have concerned the national honor, that the contest should be prosecuted with vigor and effect; and the conduct of the peace party, however well intended, exhibited at least as much of party spirit as of patriotism.

The method proposed by Mr Gallatin, the secretary of

the treasury, to raise the necessary funds, was certainly judicious. The customs on imports, hitherto the principal source of revenue, would of course, be much diminished by the war. Mr Gallatin proposed, by doubling the existing duties, and by laying the necessary internal taxes, to raise an annual revenue sufficient to pay the ordinary expenses of government, and the interest of such sums as it would become necessary to borrow; and to support the war, by a series of loans. But internal taxes were very unpopular, and congress was slow in imposing them; — and so large a proportion of the merchants and capitalists were opposed to the war, that of the first loan proposed by government, not much more than half was subscribed. The deficiency was supplied by the issue of treasury notes, which soon began to pass at a large discount.

The earlier military operations of the American armies were directed by officers, who seemed to carry with them a certain authority, from having served in subaltern situations during the revolutionary war. But these ancient generals entirely disappointed the hopes of the country, and brought such disgrace upon the American arms, as could only be wiped away by the brilliant achievements of those younger officers, who were formed in the course of the war, and who became so distinguished towards its close.

The British had in Canada, a force of 6000 regular troops; the provincial militia were zealous in the cause; and extensive alliances had been made with the Indians, — large numbers of whom were taken into the British service. Tecumseh, the famous Shawanee chief, served in the British armies, with the rank and pay of a brigadier general. Three American armies were assembled for the invasion of Canada; one at Detroit under general Hull, governor of the Michigan territory; one on the Niagara frontier, under the immediate command of general Van Rensselaer of the New York militia; and one at Plattsburg under general Dearborn, who was commander-in-chief of the armies designed for the invasion of Canada.

On the 12th of July, general Hull crossed the river Detroit,\* with a body of regular troops, three regiments of Ohio volunteers, and a regiment of Michigan militia,

\* The strait which connects lake St Clair with lake Erie.

amounting in the whole to 2500 men. On entering Canada, he published a proclamation, in which he assured the inhabitants, that the conquest of their country was inevitable. He invited them to join his standard, and promised in case of submission, protection to their persons, property and rights; but threatened if they opposed him, and especially if they co-operated with the Indian allies of Great Britain, a desolating and exterminating war.

The British were posted at Malden, at the mouth of the river Detroit, where was a military post, at which the Indians of the northwest were supplied with arms and ammunition, and encouraged in acts of hostility against the United States. The whole British force at Malden, regulars, militia and Indians, was far inferior to Hull's army, and a vigorous advance would have insured the capture of the place. But except one or two slight skirmishes, Hull remained inactive in his camp, twelve miles above Malden, till the 8th of August, when, much to the chagrin and disappointment of his troops, he recrossed the river and retired to Detroit.

On the day of the retreat, a smart skirmish took place at Maguaga, between a body of British and Indians, and a detachment under the command of colonel Millar, which had been sent to escort a party of Ohio volunteers, who were hastening to join the American camp. Millar charged the enemy with the bayonet, and put them to flight, but was obliged to return without effecting his object. On the 13th, general Brock, the governor of Upper Canada, arrived at Malden with considerable reinforcements; he immediately advanced upon Detroit, and on the 15th planted batteries on the banks of the river opposite the town, and summoned Hull to surrender, stating that he should otherwise be unable to restrain the fury of his Indian allies. This threat made a strong impression upon Hull, who seems always to have had before his eyes the dread of the Indians; but he returned a spirited answer, and the cannonade on both sides immediately commenced. At daylight, on the 16th, the British crossed the river, three miles below Detroit. They formed in close columns, and immediately commenced their march upon the town. Preparations were in the meantime made on the American side. The regular troops occupied the fort; the volunteers were so



stationed as to flank the enemy; a detachment under colonels M'Arthur and Cass, was ready to fall upon their rear; and two twentyfour pounders, loaded with grape, were so planted as to sweep the advancing columns. Brock had advanced within five hundred yards of the American lines, and the artillery was just ready to open upon him, — when Hull ordered all the troops to retire within the fort, and hung out a white flag in token of surrender. The capitulation was soon signed; the troops became prisoners of war, and the fort with all its stores, and the whole territory of Michigan, passed into the hands of the British.\*

An event so disgraceful to the American arms did not fail to excite universal indignation; and this indignation was not unmingled with alarm; for the surrender of the Michigan territory left all the Indian tribes of the west and north, at liberty to join the British; an opportunity which they did not fail to improve. The state of Ohio, and the territories of Indiana and Illinois, were more immediately exposed; but by the spirited exertions of their governors, aided by the ready assistance of the state of Kentucky, an army of volunteers, amounting to 8000 men, was quickly assembled, and entrusted by the president to the command of general Harrison. Several expeditions were sent against the Indian towns, with considerable success; though the insubordination of the volunteers too frequently defeated the plans of their leaders.

While general Harrison concentrated his forces at Sandusky, general Winchester advanced to fort Defiance, and descending the Maumee, took post at the rapids of that river. About forty miles north of Winchester's camp, on the river Raisin,† was the village of Frenchtown, distant more than seventy miles from the inhabited parts of Ohio. The inhabitants of this village sent a pressing message to Winchester, re-

\* Hull was afterwards tried by a court martial, found guilty of cowardice and neglect of duty, and sentenced to be shot. But the execution of the sentence was remitted by the president. He has since published a book, in which he attempts to share the disgrace of his surrender with the war department, and with general Dearborn, who had concluded an unauthorized armistice with the governor of Canada, and thus enabled him to concentrate all his forces against Hull. No doubt the American general was badly supported; but this fact is far from justifying his cowardly surrender.

† A tributary of lake Erie.

questing assistance, and informing him that they were threatened with destruction, by the British and Indian force at Malden, on the other side of the lake. Winchester took council from his humanity, rather than his prudence, and on the 20th of December arrived at Frenchtown with all his forces. He had with him near 800 men, but his situation was very dangerous. Malden was but twenty miles distant; and the frozen surface of the lake offered to the enemy a smooth and solid road. When Harrison heard of Winchester's advance, he became much alarmed and pushed on from Sandusky with his whole army. But he was too late to render the assistance he intended.

On the evening of the 21st January, colonel Proctor, who commanded at Malden, left that place at the head of 600 British and Canadians, and about a thousand Indians, under the chiefs Splitlog and Roundhead; and the next day, at daybreak, made a furious attack on the American camp at Frenchtown. The right wing was quickly broken, and driven across the river, where it was intercepted by a large body of Indians, and entirely destroyed. The left wing maintained its position, and fought with great valor; but as the enemy had gained the rear, and cut off all possibility of escape, general Winchester, who had early in the day been taken prisoner by a Wyandot chief, agreed to capitulate. One of the express conditions of the capitulation was, that the prisoners should be protected from the fury of the Indians.

Over 300 of the Americans had been slain in the battle; and Proctor marched off with his able-bodied prisoners, leaving on the field sixtyfour of the wounded. These unhappy sufferers, by the care of the inhabitants of Frenchtown, were removed into the neighboring houses; and the British commander gave a promise that sleighs should be sent to convey them to Malden. But early the next morning, a party of Indians came into the town, set the houses on fire, and tomahawked, scalped and murdered the wounded men in the most barbarous and inhuman manner.

Such were the early operations on the Detroit frontier. The movements of the other armies, designed for the invasion of Canada, were attended with similar results. The army of the centre — for so the troops commanded by Van Rens-

selaer were denominated — was stationed along the river Niagara.\* The number of the troops was about 6000, of whom 1300 were new levies of the regular army, and the rest militia. The British had, on the opposite shore, a force of 2400, of which general Brock, after the surrender of Hull, hastened to assume the command.

Previously to the war, it had been a very common idea, reiterated in the debates of congress, and in newspaper essays, that Canada would prove an easy, and almost bloodless conquest. Impressed with this idea, and inspired by the success of lieutenant Elliot, who had just arrived to superintend the naval operations of that quarter, and who had succeeded in cutting out two British vessels from under the guns of fort Erie, the militia loudly demanded to be led into the enemy's territory. Van Rensselaer yielded to their demands; and on the morning of the 13th of October, a body of troops was sent across the river to attack the British batteries at Queenstown. The troops, under the command of several young officers, advanced with great gallantry, and carried the batteries at the point of the bayonet.

General Brock having rallied his troops, and received reinforcements, in his turn attacked the American detachment. But the forces, under captain Wool, succeeded in maintaining their ground; the enemy was repulsed, and general Brock was slain. Thus far, the Americans had been successful; but the British were soon reinforced, and general Sheaffe renewed the attack. The militia had viewed the conflict from the opposite shore; and nothing but their presence at Queenstown was needed to secure the victory. But the sight of the battle had abated their military ardor; and neither the commands nor the supplications of their general, could prevail on them to cross the river. They had discovered that the constitution did not require them to go beyond the limits of the United States. Left thus without assistance, the gallant band on the other side of the river was soon overpowered, and compelled to surrender. The American loss, in this battle of Queenstown, in killed, wounded and prisoners, fell not much short of a thousand men. The loss of the British was about a hundred.

Van Rensselaer resigned his command, and was suc-

\* The stream which connects lakes Erie and Ontario.

ceeded by general Smyth. This new commander issued two flaming proclamations, in which, after censuring the want of skill and science betrayed by his predecessor, he called upon the 'men of New York,' to join him in a new expedition against Canada, in which he assured them of the most brilliant success. This call was not disregarded. A respectable force of volunteers assembled under general Porter, and joined Smyth's regular troops. Boats were collected, and every preparation made for crossing the river.

The troops were twice embarked; but the first Dec. time they were landed in order to dine, and the second time — they disembarked, and marched into winter quarters. Thus terminated the achievements of general Smyth; not, however, till this bloodless invasion had been followed by a duel equally bloodless, between himself and general Porter.

The feelings of shame and disappointment which these disastrous attempts on Canada excited, were a good deal relieved by the brilliant successes of the American navy. For thirty years, the British flag had waved triumphantly over the ocean; and in countless engagements with the Spanish, French, Dutch and Danes, not a single frigate had been lost, in anything like an equal contest. The Americans were regarded as a still inferior enemy; and the newspaper bravados about the conquest of Canada, were at least equalled by the pompous terms, in which the British foretold the annihilation of the American navy.

Events soon taught them to speak a different language. On the 18th of August, off the coast of Labrador, the frigate *Constitution*, commanded by captain Hull, fell in with the British frigate *Guerriere*. After manœuvring for some time to gain the weather-gage, Hull laid his ship within musket-shot of the enemy, and opened a tremendous fire. In fifteen minutes the mizen-mast of the *Guerriere* went by the board. The *Constitution* then took a position to rake the enemy, and sweep his decks with grape shot. In a little while, the *Guerriere*'s fore and main masts were shot away, and the ship lay an unmanageable wreck. Captain Dacres had lost fifteen of his crew killed, and sixtythree wounded, and was under the necessity of striking his colors. The *Constitution* had but seven killed, and seven wounded.

On the 18th of October, off the island of Bermuda, the

sloop of war, *Wasp*, commanded by captain Jones, fell in with the British armed brig, the *Frolic*. On discovering the *Wasp*, the *Frolic* waited her approach, and an action soon commenced. The sea was so rough that the muzzles of the guns were often under water. The British fired as their vessel rose, and their shot principally went over; the *Wasp* fired as she sunk, and generally struck the hull of her antagonist. Towards the end of the action, the ships were so near, that in loading, the *Wasp's* rammers struck the sides of the *Frolic*. Captain Jones now gave the word to board; but on gaining the enemy's deck, which was slippery with blood, the boarding party was surprised to find no one there, except the man at the helm, and three officers. The officers threw down their swords, and lieutenant Biddle, who led the boarders, leaped into the rigging, and hauled down the British colors. Out of a crew of 110 men, only twenty had escaped uninjured; thirty were killed. The *Wasp* had but five killed, and five wounded. The victory was well earned; but a few hours after the battle, before the ships could be got into sailing trim, the *Poictiers* seventyfour came up, took possession of both vessels, and carried them into Bermuda.

On the 25th of the same month of October, the United States, commanded by captain Decatur, met, off the western islands, the British frigate *Macedonian*. The *Macedonian* had the weather-gage, and could chose her own distance. She kept well off, for some time, but suffered so severely from the superior fire of her antagonist, that captain Cardan, her commander, changed his plan, and soon came to close action. But in this situation, the superiority of the American fire was more conspicuous than before; the *Macedonian's* mizen and main-topmasts were shot away, her rigging entirely cut to pieces, and almost all her guns disabled. More than a third of the crew were killed and wounded, and Cardan was obliged to strike his flag. The United States had but six killed and seven wounded, and was so little injured, as soon to be ready for another action.

On the 30th of December, off the coast of Brazil, the *Constitution*, now commanded by commodore Bainbridge, captured the Java frigate, commanded by captain Lambert. The Java was a new ship, and one of the finest vessels of her class, in the British navy. Besides her own crew, she

had on board a hundred supernumeraries for the supply of the ships in the East Indian seas. But her fire was soon silenced; her masts shot away; her hull pierced in every direction; her captain slain, with sixty of his crew, besides near twice as many, wounded. The Constitution, which was but little injured, took a position under the bows of the Java, and prepared to give a raking fire, when the British pulled down the flag, which for some time had been waving at the stump of the mainmast. The Constitution had nine killed and twentyfive wounded.\*

Besides these celebrated actions, the public and private armed vessels had made numerous and valuable prizes; and the enthusiasm excited throughout the country in favor of the navy was only equalled by the mortification and disappointment of the British. Circumstances in palliation of their defeat were diligently sought for; the American frigates were declared to be seventyfours in disguise; and their crews, it was boldly asserted, were deserters from the British navy. It was not the loss of a few frigates, for which the British nation was concerned. Such a loss, however serious it might have been to the United States, was nothing to them; but it was the moral effect of these defeats; it was wounded pride, and a just alarm, lest the United States, as they had rivalled the commerce of Great Britain, so they might come at last to endanger her naval supremacy.

Congress assembled in November. They passed laws for the increase of the army, and acts authorizing the construction of six ships of the line, six frigates and six sloops of war. To raise the necessary funds for the operations of the ensuing year, authority was given to issue ten millions of treasury notes, and to create new stock to the amount of eleven millions. Notwithstanding all  
1813 the efforts of the peace party, who supported De Witt Clinton, of New York, as their candidate, Mr Madison was re-elected president. He received one hundred and twentythree votes, while Mr Clinton had but eighty-nine. Indeed, the strength of the war party had

\* Of the captured frigates, the Macedonian only was brought into port; the other two were so injured as to make it necessary to destroy them.

rather increased than diminished. All were delighted at the success of the navy, and since the disastrous campaign in Canada, many who were in principle opposed to the war, thought the national honor concerned in its vigorous prosecution.

Soon after the re-inauguration of Mr Madison, congress re-assembled. In his message, the president stated that Russia had offered her mediation to bring about peace between Great Britain and the United States; and that he had accepted the offer, and had appointed John Quincy Adams, minister at St Petersburg, Albert Gallatin, secretary of the treasury, and James A. Bayard, of Delaware, commissioners for this purpose. Gallatin and Bayard had already embarked for Europe; but Great Britain refused to treat under the mediation of Russia. She proposed, however, to appoint envoys, to meet the American commissioners at Gottenberg, and this proposal was accepted by the American government. The place of meeting was afterwards changed to Ghent; and after a good deal of delay a negotiation was actually commenced.

The principal object of the present session of congress, was to impose such taxes as might furnish the government with the means of paying the interest on their loans, and thus enable them to raise money, on reasonable terms. This business had been too long delayed; but as the necessity of attending to it had now become very apparent, the necessary bills were passed with little debate, except as to the details of the taxes, and without any serious opposition.

The British government, alarmed at the success of the American cruisers, resolved to station such a force on the coasts of the United States, as should entirely interrupt the naval operations of the Americans, by preventing the departure or return of their vessels. Admiral Warren was sent with a powerful fleet to carry this design into execution. He detached rear admiral Cockburn, with several ships of the line, frigates and smaller vessels, to cruise up and down the Chesapeake. This squadron made great havoc among the coasting vessels of the bay; and occasionally landed parties, which plundered the country along the shores, and were often guilty of great cruelty and outrage. The villages of Frenchtown, Havre de Grace,

Georgetown, Fredericktown and Hampton, were destroyed, and great alarm was felt for the safety of Annapolis, Norfolk, and Baltimore. The British attempted to reach Norfolk, and for this purpose, made an attack on Craney's island; but they were repulsed with the loss of 200 men. Cockburn afterwards left the bay, and continued his ravages along the coast of the Carolinas.

Three seventyfours, and other smaller vessels, blockaded the Delaware; and when the inhabitants of Lewistown refused to supply them with provisions and water, they bombarded and attacked the place; but they were repulsed with loss, and soon after left the bay. A squadron under admiral Hardy, watched Long Island sound, and blockaded the frigates *United States* and *Macedonian*, which had taken refuge in the harbor of New London. Decatur sent a challenge to the *Endymion* and *Statira*, two frigates which composed a part of the blockading fleet, but the invitation was declined.

Notwithstanding the presence of a far superior British force on the shores of the United States, the American cruisers still kept the seas, and made numerous captures. On the 25th of February, off Demarara, captain Lawrence, in the sloop of war *Hornet*, met the British armed brig, the *Peacock*. After an action of fifteen minutes, the *Peacock* struck her colors, and at the same time hoisted a signal of distress. The *Hornet's* boats were immediately lowered; but before all the captured crew could be removed, the *Peacock* went down, carrying with her thirteen of her own, and four of the *Hornet's* men.

Captain Lawrence returned to the *United States*, and in reward for the brilliant achievement of capturing the *Peacock*, was appointed to the command of the *Chesapeake*, then lying in Boston harbor. He had scarcely joined his vessel, when he received a challenge from captain Brooke, of the British frigate *Shannon*. This frigate, together with the *Tenedos* had for some time been blockading the harbor of Boston, but Brooke gave assurances, that if his challenge was accepted, the *Tenedos* should bear off and keep out of sight. Neither the *Chesapeake* nor her crew were in good trim; and there were many reasons why Lawrence should have imitated the prudent conduct of the British commanders before New London. But his impetuous



courage decided otherwise, and he immediately got the Chesapeake under weigh. After the vessels had made a considerable offing, the action began at pistol shot distance. The fire of both ships was very destructive; and unluckily for the Chesapeake, her commander was wounded early in the action, and most of her other officers killed or disabled. Her foresail was shot away, so that she no longer obeyed the helm; her anchor caught in one of the after ports of the Shannon; and she was thus exposed to a raking fire. Captain Brooke gave orders to board; and after a severe struggle on the deck of the Chesapeake, her crew was overcome, and she became a prize to the enemy. The Chesapeake had fortyseven killed and ninetyseven wounded; on board the Shannon, twentysix were killed and fiftyseven wounded. The exultation of the British at this victory, was almost unbounded. Captain Brooke was loaded with compliments and honors; and the capture of a whole French fleet would not have excited half the enthusiasm, called forth by the conquest of a single American frigate.

In the month of August, the British made another prize. During the summer, the American brig *Argus* appeared in the British channel, and made great havoc among the vessels employed in the trade between England and Ireland. Two British vessels were sent in pursuit of her; and on the 14th of August she was brought to action by the *Pelican*, and surrendered after a close engagement of fortythree minutes.

On the 5th of September, the United States brig *Enterprise*, commanded by captain Burrows, sailed from Portsmouth, and the next day she fell in with, and captured, the British brig *Boxer*, commanded by captain Blythe. Both commanders were slain in the action. Besides the encounters of public vessels, the American privateers cruised with good success, and made numerous prizes.

At the southwest, the United States were called upon to encounter a new enemy. A large tract of country, including the southern portion of Tennessee, the western part of Georgia, and all the northern part of the present states of Alabama and Mississippi, was at this time, possessed by four considerable tribes of Indians. These tribes, the Creeks, the Cherokees, the Chickasaws and Choctaws,

had a population of 60,000 souls, and could muster 6000 warriors. They had risen, in some degree, above their original savage state ; and had begun to give considerable attention to agriculture and the mechanic arts. But they still retained all their barbarous fondness for war ; and when Tecumseh, the famous Shawanee chief, came among them, and besought them to take hold of the same hatchet with their red brethren of the northwest, a considerable part of all the tribes was persuaded to engage in the war against the United States. Several murders were committed ; the approach of hostilities became plainly visible ; the white inhabitants of the neighborhood were greatly alarmed ; and those of the Tenshaw district, sought refuge in fort Mimms, a post on the river Alabama. But they were deceived in their hope of protection ; for on the 14th of August, fort Mimms was attacked by a large body of Indians. The works were set on fire ; and the whole garrison, as well as the women and children, who had sought refuge in the fort, perished in the flames, or by the tomahawks of the assailants.

The states of Georgia and Tennessee, were prompt to punish this aggression. Georgia raised a brigade of 1800 men, under the command of general Floyd ; and two divisions of the Tennessee militia, one under general Jackson, the other under general Cocke, immediately took the field. The operations of these troops were very much impeded by the usual insubordination of volunteers, the great scarcity of supplies and provisions, and the want of co-operation between the separate corps. Still, their success was very conspicuous. The Indians were attacked and defeated with great slaughter, at Tallushatches, Talageda, the Hibbilee towns, and Autosee ; great numbers of their chiefs and warriors were slain, their country ravaged, and their villages burned.

The last decisive battle was fought at the great bend of the Talapoosa, on the 27th of March, 1814. The river in this place bends round in the form of a crescent, inclosing a peninsula of about 100 acres. At this peninsula, the Creeks had concentrated all their remaining forces, to the amount of 1000 men ; and had collected a great store of ammunition and provisions. The isthmus leading to the main land was about forty yards across, and was strongly fortified by a

breastwork of logs and earth. General Jackson had, under his command, a force of 3000 men, partly Tennessee militia, and in part, friendly Indians, and he resolved to attack this last strong hold of the enemy. General Coffee, with 700 mounted men, and 600 friendly Indians, was sent across the river to take a station in the rear of the fort, while other corps were so posted, as to cut off every avenue of escape. The fort was then assaulted in front; and after an obstinate defence, and a desperate struggle, the breastwork was carried. More than 800 of the Indians perished; and this decisive victory put an end to the war.

The hostile tribes had lost more than 2000 of their warriors; their towns had been destroyed; the strong places of their country had fallen into the hands of the white men; and they were glad to obtain a peace, even under condition of relinquishing a considerable portion of their territory. After the battle of the Great Bend, Witherford, the principal surviving chief of the Creeks, came in, and surrendered himself. He addressed general Jackson in the following words. 'I fought at fort Mimms, — I fought the army of Georgia, — I did you all the injury I could. — Had I been supported as I was promised, I would have done you more. But my warriors are all killed, and I can fight no longer. — I look back with sorrow that I have brought destruction upon my nation. — I am now in your power. — Do with me as you please. — I am a soldier.'

It is now time to turn our attention to the events of the war on the Canadian frontier.

The British had a fleet on lake Ontario, commanded by Sir James Yeo; and commodore Chauncey, the American naval commander, had been making great efforts to equip a force strong enough to contend for the command of the lake. His exertions were attended with such success, that in the spring of 1813, he became decidedly superior to his adversary, and was able to blockade the British fleet in the harbor of Kingston. General Dearborn, who would, perhaps, have done better had he marched against Montreal, took advantage of the present situation of affairs, to undertake an expedition against York, the capital of Upper Canada. He succeeded in getting possession of the town, and in destroying the public buildings, and a large quantity of stores;

but he lost 100 men by the explosion of a magazine, and among the rest, general Pike, a valuable officer.

During Dearborn's absence on this expedition, a British force from Kingston made an attack on Sackett's May harbor. They were repulsed with loss; but the alarm having been given that the town was in possession of the British, a large quantity of provisions and naval stores was set on fire and destroyed.

Towards the end of May, the American army crossed the Niagara, and took possession of fort George.\* The British retreated to Burlington heights, near the western extremity of lake Ontario. Generals Chandler and Winder were sent with a strong detachment to dislodge them from that post. But these officers suffered themselves to be June 6 surprised by a night attack on their camp at Stony Creek; in the confusion of the contest, both the American commanders were captured; and the next morning, the detachment retreated towards fort George.

Colonel Boerstler was soon afterwards sent with a body of 500 men, to attack a post of the British at the Beaver Dams, ten miles west of Queenstown. But the force at June 24 this place was much stronger than the detachment sent against it; and after a vigorous action, Boerstler, with all his men, was obliged to surrender.

Another detachment was sent against the enemy at Burlington heights. Not succeeding in their attack, this Aug. force put into York, which was again plundered and burned. An engagement soon after took place between the two fleets, but without any decisive event.

The command of general Dearborn had been marked by little vigor or success. He had failed to fulfil the expectations of the country, and in the month of August, he was superseded by general Wilkinson. Not much, however, was gained by the change. Wilkinson had, under his command, including the troops at Plattsburg, a force of 12,000 men, and an expedition against Montreal was planned, of which great hopes were entertained. One division, under Wilkinson, was to proceed down the St Lawrence, while the

\* At the entrance of the river into lake Ontario, opposite fort Niagara.

other, under Hampton, was to march from Plattsburg, and to join Wilkinson before his arrival at Montreal. Wilkinson embarked his troops, and descended the river as far as Barnhart's, on the left bank of the St Lawrence, a little below the northern boundary of the United States. On the passage down the river, a considerable action was Nov. 11 fought at Williamsburg, between a detachment under general Boyd, and a party of the British; the Americans lost about 250 men, and the victory was claimed by both sides. Wilkinson was now waiting the arrival of Hampton; but letters were received from that general, stating, that the scarcity of provisions was so great, that he was under the necessity of falling back upon Plattsburg; but that he would keep the communication open with Canada, and in this way would co-operate with the main army.

Wilkinson chose to consider this letter as a refusal to assist in the attack on Montreal; he retired to French's mills, on the American side of the St Lawrence, where the troops went into winter quarters; and nothing grew out of this expedition except a court martial, and abundance of recriminations between the commanding officers.

In December, fort George was evacuated by the Americans; the works were blown up, and the adjacent village of Newark was set on fire and burned to the ground. This act of wanton cruelty was soon after amply revenged. For the British crossed over to the American side; took fort Niagara; and burned the towns of Niagara, Lewistown, Black Rock, Buffalo, and almost every other village in the vicinity of the Niagara river.

The events of this year, most honorable to the American arms, took place at the northwest. After the destruction of Winchester's division, at the river Raisin, Harrison employed himself in drawing together, and disciplining his new levies, and in strengthening the posts at fort Meigs and Upper Sandusky. In April, the British and Indian army, under general Proctor, moved down the Maumee, and besieged Harrison in his camp at fort Meigs. General Clay, with 1200 Kentuckians, marched to his relief. Sorties were made from the fort; and the works of the enemy were attacked by the troops under Clay, at first, with good success; but colonel Dudley, misled by the ardor of pursuit, suffered himself to be drawn

into an ambuscade, where he had 150 men killed, and 500 taken prisoners. Proctor, however, found himself obliged to raise the siege. The fort was entrusted to the command of general Clay; and Harrison hastened to Franklin, in Ohio, where he employed himself in organizing the new levies, and preparing for a vigorous campaign.

Ever since the beginning of the war, the British had enjoyed the command of lake Erie; and the facility with which they could transport their forces from one point to another, gave Proctor, and his ally Tecumseh, a great advantage. The skill of Harrison was severely taxed to distribute his forces in such a way, as to afford adequate protection, to the extensive and exposed frontier on which he commanded.

A post, called fort Stephenson, had been established at lower Sandusky, and garrisoned with 150 Kentucky volunteers, under major Crogan. On the first of August, general Proctor, with 1200 men, appeared before the fort, and after assailing it in vain with his artillery, attempted to carry it by storm. But the storming party was repulsed with a loss of 150 men, and the British commander thought proper to retire. The garrison had but one killed and seven wounded.

Early in the season, commodore Perry had been ordered to repair to Presque isle, and there to build a fleet for the purpose of gaining the command of lake Erie. The Americans, at this time, had not a single ship on the lake. Timber was abundant; all other materials for ship-building, especially naval stores, had to be transported a great distance. But the genius and activity of Perry overcame every obstacle; and by the month of August, he had equipped a flotilla of nine ships. The Lawrence and Niagara mounted twenty guns each, but the other vessels were much smaller. The strength of the whole fleet was fiftyfour guns.

The British flotilla consisted of six vessels, mounting in the whole sixtyfour guns, and was commanded by commodore Barclay. It lay at anchor under the guns of Malden; and Perry, as soon as his vessels were equipped, sailed for Put-in-bay, opposite that fort, with the design of bringing the enemy to action.

Barclay did not decline the contest. On the 10th of September, the British fleet appeared off Put-in-bay; and Per-

ry immediately got under sail, and stood out to meet it. The wind was light ; the fleets approached each other slowly ; and for a long time the Lawrence, the commodore's flag ship, which crowded all sail and pushed on without waiting for the other vessels, was obliged to sustain the whole fire of the enemy's squadron. At length she was pierced with shot in every direction, and totally disabled. Perry shifted his flag to the Niagara, with which he broke the enemy's line ; and the smaller vessels now coming up, he succeeded in capturing the whole British squadron.

This brilliant and decisive victory gave the Americans the command of lake Erie ; and general Harrison hastened to improve the advantage. He had been joined by governor Shelby, at the head of 3000 Kentucky volunteers ; and his forces now amounted to 6000 men. He embarked his troops on board commodore Perry's squadron, and sailed for Malden, in expectation of finding the enemy there. But Proctor had evacuated that place, as well as Detroit and the other western posts, and had retired up the river Thames. Harrison immediately commenced a rapid pursuit ; and on the 5th of October overtook the enemy in the vicinity of the Moravian towns.

The British were drawn up with their right resting on the river Thames, and their left defended by an impenetrable morass, and covered by the whole body of their Indian allies. Harrison drew up his forces in two lines ; and colonel Johnson's regiment of mounted volunteers, was ordered to begin the attack. They made a brilliant charge, and penetrated the lines of the enemy in every direction. The British officers threw down their swords, and the men surrendered on the field. On the left, Tecumseh fought at the head of the Indians, and the struggle was much more severe. But that celebrated chief having fallen in the contest, and a party of American horse having gained their rear, the Indians sought safety in precipitate flight. The Americans had but seven killed and twentytwo wounded ; the killed and wounded of the enemy were not numerous ; but 600 of his best troops were taken prisoners. The rest of the army was dispersed, and eight pieces of artillery with all the stores and baggage, fell into the hands of Harrison. Proctor himself escaped with great difficulty.

This victory put an end to the Indian confederacy, which had been organized and sustained by the genius of Tecumseh ; and on the 11th of October general Harrison concluded an armistice with several of the principal tribes, preparatory to a general peace.

---

## CHAPTER XXIV.

State of affairs at the beginning of 1814. — Campaign of 1814. — Battle of Chippawa. — Battle of Niagara. — Assault on fort Erie. — Sortie. — Battle of Plattsburg. — M'Donough's naval victory. — British expedition up the Chesapeake. — Battle of Bladensburg. — Capture of Washington. — Capitulation of Alexandria. — Battle of Baltimore. — Naval affairs. — Expedition against New Orleans. — Battle of New Orleans. — Peace. — Situation of the country. — Hartford Convention. — Beneficial results of the war.

IN the progress of the war, the American armies had acquired discipline, and the officers experience. Military talent had been developed ; and the generals under whom the war began, having in the two preceding campaigns betrayed their utter inefficiency, had now for the most part retired from command.

A great change had likewise taken place in the situation of Great Britain. In the spring of 1814, the peace of Paris released the fleets and armies so long employed in the war against France, and left the British at liberty to direct their whole strength against America. Early in May, several veteran regiments which had served the Spanish campaigns under the duke of Wellington, were shipped for America. Besides the troops destined to invade and ravage the coast, the armies in Canada were much strengthened ; and preparations were made for invading the United States in that direction.

The forces of Upper Canada were concentrated at fort George, under the command of general Drummond. The American army on the opposite side of the Niagara was commanded by general Brown.



On the 3d of July, Brown crossed the Niagara, and summoned fort Erie, which immediately surrendered. The next day, the army moved towards Chippewa, where a large body of the enemy was encamped, and the advanced corps soon arrived in the vicinity of the British. On the morning of the 5th, several skirmishes took place; and in the afternoon both armies were drawn up, in order of battle, on a plain, about a mile west of Chippewa. The right of the Americans was commanded by general Scott; on the left were the New York and Pennsylvania volunteers, under general Porter; and general Ripley commanded the reserve.

The British, under general Riall, advanced in three columns. Their charge was impetuous, and the brigade under general Porter broke and fled in every direction. Scott's flank was thus left uncovered. But his troops received the enemy with the coolest intrepidity; and Towson's artillery having silenced the British batteries, poured a shower of cannister shot upon the infantry, with excellent effect. General Ripley hastily advanced to supply the place of Porter's fugitive troops; but before he reached the ground, the British were completely routed, and in full retreat. They retired behind their works at Chippewa, with the loss of 500 men. The loss of the Americans was 323.

After this battle, the British fell back upon fort George. Brown pushed forward, and took post at Queenstown. He afterwards marched upon fort George, and encamped in its vicinity, in expectation that the British would come out and attack him. But they saw fit to decline the contest; and general Brown returned to his camp at Queenstown, and on the 24th, fell back upon Chippewa.

The next day, he was informed that the British army had received reinforcements, and was advancing in full strength. General Scott, with his brigade, Towson's artillery, and the dragoons, was ordered to march forward with all speed; and the rest of the army was soon after put in motion. When Scott arrived opposite the cataract of Niagara, he discovered a large body of the enemy directly in his front, and separated from him only by a narrow wood. He immediately advanced, and the battle began at six in the afternoon. The contest had continued a full hour, when general Ripley came up, and putting his men into action, relieved Scott's exhausted troops. The night closed in;

and the moon, sometimes obscured by clouds, and sometimes bursting forth in full brightness, shed an uncertain light upon the field. The other brigades now arrived, and the battle was as warmly disputed as ever. The British artillery was posted on a commanding eminence beyond the reach of the American batteries. It was supported by a body of infantry, and kept up a destructive fire on the American lines. Ripley gave orders to attack this battery; and colonel Millar advancing at the head of his regiment in the most gallant style, stormed the height, bayoneted the artillerymen, and turned the guns upon the enemy. In the meantime, major Jessup had passed round the enemy's right flank, and a detachment of his regiment pushing into the rear, made prisoners, general Riall and all his attendants. The British were reinforced; they made several desperate attempts to recover their artillery; but without success. At the last charge, general Porter's volunteers threw themselves upon the enemy, broke their lines, took a number of prisoners, and amply redeemed their behavior at Chippewa. Generals Brown and Scott were both wounded, and the command devolved on general Ripley. About midnight, both armies retired to their encampments, fatigued and satiated with slaughter. In this desperate battle, the best fought and most sanguinary engagement of the war, about three thousand troops were arrayed on either side, and each army lost about nine hundred men.

The Americans now fell back on fort Erie; and general Gaines arrived, to take command, till the other officers could recover of their wounds. The British advanced, and invested the fort. The fortifications were very imperfect, and the enemy's cannon soon made what was judged a practicable breach. The besiegers had been strongly reinforced, and now prepared for an assault. On the 15th of May, about two in the morning, two British columns advanced against the fort. That on the left was easily repulsed by the infantry under major Wood, and captain Towson's artillery. The other column was bravely opposed by the ninth regiment; but the assailants, under general Drummond, pressed forward with the most determined valor, and twice planted their scaling ladders against the parapet. They were driven back with great carnage; but concealed by the

darkness of the night, and by the rolling clouds of smoke, they passed round the ditch, planted their ladders a third time, carried the parapet, and bayoneted the artillerists. The British were now in possession of the bastion; preparations were making to drive them back, when all operations were for a while suspended, by the accidental explosion of a large magazine, which made terrible havoc among the enemy, and served effectually to dislodge them. The survivors retreated hastily out of the fort. They were rallied, and were preparing for a new attack; but before the disordered columns could be re-formed, the Americans pressed upon them, and the British were compelled to seek refuge behind their own batteries. They had lost over 900 men, while the American loss was only eightysix.

The British still continued before the fort; but on the 17th of September, a sally was made which obliged them to abandon the siege. General Porter gained their rear by a circuitous route, while colonel Millar charged them in front. The entrenchments were carried, and the batteries all taken. After spiking the guns, and destroying the magazines, the Americans withdrew behind their own lines. Three hundred and eightyfive prisoners were made, and the whole British loss exceeded 1000 men. General Drummond soon after retired to Chippewa; and the American army having crossed over to Buffalo, active operations were suspended on both sides.

Meanwhile, a large body of troops had been assembled in Lower Canada, under the command of Sir George Prevost, with the design of invading the United States by the way of lake Champlain. The British forces in this quarter had been strongly reinforced by the arrival of several of Lord Wellington's veteran regiments, and now amounted to over 14,000 men. General Macomb was at Plattsburgh, the chief naval depot on lake Champlain, where was a great quantity of military and naval stores, with 1500 regular troops; and it was upon this point that Prevost directed his march. Macomb did what he could to retard the progress of the British, by breaking up bridges, obstructing the roads, and calling out the militia. Prevost pushed on rapidly, but with caution, and having overcome every obstacle, on the sixth of September he arrived before Plattsburg. The Saranac flows through the town, and Macomb was

strongly posted in extensive field works erected on the high grounds, on the southern bank of that river.

The American fleet, under commodore M'Donough, consisting of four armed vessels, and ten galleys and gun-boats, mounting in the whole eightysix guns, and manned with 820 men, lay at anchor in the bay of Plattsburg. The British fleet was commanded by captain Downie, and consisted of four armed vessels, and thirteen gun-boats, mounting in the whole ninetyfive guns, and manned with 1050 men. A simultaneous attack, by land and water, was resolved upon, and the British army awaited the arrival of their fleet. On the 11th, captain Downie was seen standing round Cumberland head, the northern point of the bay of Plattsburg. He immediately bore down upon the American squadron, and anchored within 300 yards' distance. The crews on both sides cheered, and the action began. The wind was light, the waters smooth, and there was nothing to disturb the aim of the guns. The *Cherub*, one of the enemy's ships, soon had her cables shot away; she drifted into the American line, and was obliged to surrender. At the end of two hours, the *Confiance*, the flag-ship of the British squadron, struck her colors, and the other vessels soon followed her example. Three of the gun-boats were sunk; the others escaped down the lake, none of the American vessels being in a condition to follow them.

During the naval action, a heavy cannonade was kept up upon the American works; and the British made three several attempts to pass the Saranac, but each time they were repulsed; and at night general Prevost retreated with great precipitation, leaving behind him his sick and wounded, and a great part of his baggage and stores.

Of all the expeditions undertaken by the British, they were most successful in their excursion up the Chesapeake. On the 10th of August, a powerful fleet under admiral Cochrane, with 6000 troops on board, commanded by general Ross, appeared in the bay. Commodore Barney, with a fleet of gun-boats, had taken refuge in the Patuxent. There were very few regular troops in this part of the country; and the defence of the towns and villages depended almost entirely on the militia. The British forces had landed at Benedict, on the Patuxent, about forty miles from Washington. They marched up the river in pursuit

of commodore Barney's gun-boats ; on the 21st, they reached Nottingham; and on the 22d, Upper Marlborough. Commodore Barney's flotilla was two miles further up the river; but finding it impossible to escape, he set fire to his boats, and proceeded to join general Winder.

The British were now within sixteen miles of Washington, and general Ross formed the daring plan of marching upon that city.

General Winder, with a few regular troops, was posted in the vicinity of Washington, and the militia were collecting in considerable force. The station first occupied by the American troops was Battalion-old-fields, about half way between Washington and Marlborough ; but apprehending a night attack, on the evening of the 23d they fell back to the eastern branch bridge, except general Stanbury's brigade, which was posted at Bladensburg, four miles in front. The president, and the secretaries of state, war and the navy were in the camp, and everything seemed to promise a vigorous defence. The British marched from Upper Marlborough on the afternoon of the 23d, and encamped that night, three miles in advance of the American encampment at Battalion-old-fields. The next morning, they advanced against the detachment at Bladensburg. A gallant stand was made by the marines under commodore Barney, who played their artillery with good effect, against the advancing columns of the enemy. Some of the militia regiments made a show of fighting; but they soon broke, and fled in great great disorder. The troops that occupied Washington immediately evacuated the city, and the British marched forward and took possession. Private property was spared; but the capitol and other public buildings, and the ships at the navy-yard were set on fire; and property of the United States valued at a million of dollars was destroyed. On the 25th, the British commenced a rapid retreat.

In the meantime, a British squadron had ascended the Potomac; the city of Alexandria was totally destitute of any means of defence; and the inhabitants were obliged to ransom the town at the expense of all their shipping and merchandise.

Elated by his success at Washington, general Ross resolved to make an attempt upon Baltimore. Extensive preparations had been made in expectation of an attack. The

whole population, capable of bearing arms, appeared in the ranks; and an army of 15,000 men, including the militia of Baltimore and the neighborhood, was assembled for the defence of the city. The main body was posted on the heights, three miles in front of the town, where they were strongly entrenched and defended by heavy artillery. General Stricker, with 3500 men, was stationed at Long-log-lane, four miles in advance of the principal position.

On the 22th of September, the British fleet appeared off the Patapsco; and the next morning the troops landed at North point, fourteen miles below Baltimore, and immediately began to march upon the city.

A smart action took place between the troops under general Stricker, and the advancing columns of the British. General Ross was in front of his column, with a small reconnoitring party, and very early in the action, he was mortally wounded by a rifle ball. Stricker maintained his ground for an hour and a half, when one of his regiments gave way, and he was obliged to fall back upon the main body. The British pushed on, and bivouaced that night in advance of the battle ground. The next morning, they continued their march, and halted about two miles from the American position. In the meantime, the British fleet had passed up the Patapsco, and bombarded fort M'Henry; an attempt had also been made to land and storm the batteries; but without success. Discouraged by this repulse, and disheartened by the loss of their commander, the British did not venture to attack the main body of the American forces. On the 14th, they retired to their ships, embarked, and soon after left the Chesapeake.

The incursions of the British were not limited to Chesapeake bay. On the 11th of July, a squadron under commodore Hardy took possession of Eastport; and all that part of Maine which lies east of the Penobscot was occupied by the enemy. The frigate Adams, which had taken refuge in the river, as well as a large number of merchant vessels, fell into their hands. Several attacks were made along the coast of Massachusetts and Connecticut; and the unprotected towns and islands were obliged to make the best terms they could. Notwithstanding the blockade of the American harbors, several public, and numerous privateer vessels were still able to keep the seas. They made

many prizes, and several actions were fought which redounded to the honor of the American navy. The *Essex*, under commodore Porter, after a very successful cruise in the Pacific ocean, and a most desperate and determined defence, was taken by two vessels, the frigate *Phœbe* and the *Cherub*, sloop of war, which had been sent in pursuit of her. But the British vessel *Epervier* with 120,000 dollars in specie on board, was taken in the Gulf of Mexico, by the sloop of war *Peacock*; and the *Wasp*, commanded by the gallant *Blakely*, besides making great havoc among the enemy's merchant vessels in the English channel, took first the *Reindeer*, and afterwards the *Avon*, two public vessels of equal force with herself.

The last effort of the British arms was directed against the city of New Orleans. Their fleet and army, after leaving the Chesapeake, sailed for Jamaica, where they were strongly reinforced by additional troops, under general Packenham, and an expedition against New Orleans was resolved upon. Having sailed from the West Indies, the fleet rendezvoused in the neighborhood of Ship Dec 18 island, at the entrance of lake Borgue. This lake is a broad and shallow bay which penetrates the coast of Louisiana, and is connected with lake Ponchartrain. By means of these two lakes, the water communication from the Gulf of Mexico is extended to within a few miles of New Orleans.

The defence of this important city had been entrusted to general Jackson. He had a few regular troops under his command, but his chief reliance was upon the militia of Louisiana and Mississippi, which he called out in a body; and the volunteers from Kentucky and Tennessee, who joined him in considerable numbers. The population of the city was of a mixed character, and its attachment to the American government was considered, by general Jackson, to be quite problematical. As a means of cutting off all communication between the city and the enemy, he judged it necessary to proclaim martial law.

A situation was selected, four miles below the town, where strong and extensive works were erected for the defence of the city. The right of this entrenchment rested on the river; the left was covered by an impenetrable cyprus swamp, which extended eastwardly to the shores of lake Pon-

chartrain. At either extremity of the line there was a strong bastion, commanded by a battery in the rear ; and extensive works were thrown up on the opposite bank of the river, in such a position as to sweep with their artillery the approach to the principal entrenchment.

The British army designed to attack New Orleans, exceeded 10,000 chosen troops. They embarked  
Dec 22 at Ship island ; proceeded in boats up lake Borgue ; landed at the upper extremity ; and took a position nine miles below the city. General Jackson marched out to meet them ; and a smart action took place with the advance of the British troops. By the sixth of  
1815 January, Packenham had landed all his forces, and during the next day preparations were made for storming the American entrenchments. A detachment was sent across the river to attack the flanking batteries, which were manned by a division of Kentucky volunteers, under general Morgan ; and on the morning of the 8th, the whole British army was drawn out for an attack on the American lines.

The assault was made in two columns, and was principally directed against the two bastions at the extremities of the entrenchment. The British were suffered to approach unmolested, till they arrived within three hundred yards ; when forty pieces of cannon, well charged with grape, cannister shot, and musket balls, opened upon them a tremendous and most deadly fire. The riflemen, who lay in perfect security behind an impenetrable breastwork of cotton bags, took deliberate aim, and almost every shot told with fatal effect. The column on the left was headed by Packenham himself. His troops advanced with the most determined courage, and although their leader fell mortally wounded as he was cheering them on to the crest of the glacis, they planted their ladders, mounted the parapet, and after a severe struggle with the bayonet, succeeded in gaining possession of the bastion. But they were soon driven out of it by the fire of the battery in the rear, which swept the bastion with continual discharges of artillery.

The enemy's right column advanced with equal courage, and endeavored to turn the American left. But the works had been extended as far as the ground would permit ; the foremost of the assailants sunk in the morass ; and the design



of passing round the entrenchment was quickly relinquished. The assault was continued an hour and a quarter; and during the whole of that time, the British were exposed to the American fire, which they were unable to return with the least effect. Besides Packenham, general Gibbs, the second in command, fell early in the action, and general Keane was borne off severely wounded. General Lambert, on whom the command now devolved, thought it most advisable to relinquish the attack. He retired in great confusion, leaving upwards of 2000 dead and wounded on the field of battle. The Americans had but six killed and seven wounded.

In the meantime, the batteries on the other side of the river had been successfully stormed by colonel Thornton, and fortyeight of Morgan's men killed, and 178 wounded. But general Lambert, discouraged by the ill success of the principal attack, immediately withdrew colonel Thornton's detachment to the right bank of the river. The British maintained their position till the evening of the 18th, when they commenced a silent and rapid retreat. They were suffered to retire without annoyance; for the American general, satisfied with having saved New Orleans, did not choose to hazard a defeat, and perhaps the ultimate loss of the city, by engaging his undisciplined levies in unnecessary contests with the enemy's veteran troops; goaded to desperation as they would be, by the extremity of danger.

To have attacked the British on their retreat, would, indeed, have been a useless effusion of human blood; for before the attack on New Orleans, a treaty of peace had been negotiated by the plenipotentiaries in Europe. Henry Clay and Jonathan Russell had joined the other American commissioners, and the treaty was signed at Ghent, on the 25th of December. The general peace of Europe had rendered those questions of maritime rights, in which the war originated, matters of little immediate importance; and no notice was taken of them in the treaty, of which the principal articles related to the boundaries of the two nations.

The news of peace, though quite unexpected-  
Feb. 11 ed,\* produced very general satisfaction. The

\* The American commissioners, in their previous despatches, had given but little hopes of peace. But the British agents afterwards abandoned certain points, which had hitherto interrupted the progress of the negotiation.

hope of conquering Canada had been abandoned for some time; and those who were fondest of the war, were not a little alarmed at the idea of encountering, single-handed, the whole strength of Great Britain. Enough had been done for the honor of the country, and all were delighted at the return of peace.

Indeed, it had become sufficiently evident, that the spirit of the people, and the nature of the government were but ill adapted to the prosecution of warlike enterprises. It had been found extremely difficult to obtain recruits for the army; and the public treasury was in a state of the greatest embarrassment. The large and powerful party, which had been from the beginning opposed to the war, did not hesitate to display its hostility to the administration, at all times, and on almost all occasions. An unfortunate difference had all along existed, between the president and the governors of several of the New England states, respecting the employment of the militia; and the Convention which met at Hartford \* on the 15th of December, was regarded by many as an introductory step to the dissolution of the union.

The bare suspicion of such a design has drawn down upon this celebrated meeting, a torrent of obloquy. But if we can place any dependence on the journals of the convention, or on the most positive assertions of its individual members, — many of whom were men, whose honor it is impossible to doubt, — they were very far from entertaining any treasonable intentions. The assembly seems to have been produced by the violent excitement of the times, and to have come together without any definite object. This, at least, is certain; that nothing was publicly proposed or avowed inconsistent with a true regard to the union of the states. Indeed, the principal fruits of the meeting were some proposed amendments to the constitution.

The immediate effect of the war, like that of all other wars, was no doubt, to impoverish and distress the country. Its remote results have been much more salutary. From

\* The Hartford Convention was composed of delegates appointed by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Connecticut; besides two or three members from Vermont and New Hampshire, appointed by county meetings. The convention was proposed by the legislature of Massachusetts.

this era we may date the origin, or at least, the more rapid growth of American manufactures; and that spirit of internal improvements which of late years has reflected so much honor on several of the states, was first excited by the experiments of inland transportation, produced by the exigencies of the war.

The patience with which the United States, for several years preceding, had endured the reiterated wrongs and insults of France and Great Britain, had excited throughout Europe a contempt for the American character; and had produced an impression, that the love of gain had quenched every spark of that energy and spirit, which, in the times of the revolution, had obtained for the country independence and renown. But when America was seen to carry on successfully a naval warfare, against a people who had triumphed over the fleets of every European nation, the opinion of the world was suddenly changed, and the United States rose in the estimation of foreigners, to an eminence which they have ever since maintained. Nor are the Americans themselves insensible of the true source of their strength and reputation. The navy still continues to be cherished as the best arm of the public defence, against the aggressions, or insults of foreign states.

---

## CHAPTER XXV.

Measures of Congress. — War with Algiers. — Bank of the United States. — State of the currency. — Mr Monroe elected president. — Commercial speculations. — Emigration. — Indiana admitted into the Union. — Mississippi. — Illinois. — Alabama. — Maine. — Missouri. — The Missouri question. — Cession of Florida. — Pensions granted to the revolutionary soldiers. — Canvass for the presidency. — Mr Adams chosen. — He is succeeded by general Jackson.

THE short time during which congress could continue in session after the news of peace arrived, was diligently employed in preparing for the new situation, in which the country was placed, by this event. The army was reduced to a

peace establishment of 10,000 men;\* but the navy was kept up without any diminution; and the president was authorized to send a squadron into the Mediterranean, for the protection of the American commerce in those seas. This measure was rendered necessary by the aggressions of the Algerines. This piratical regency, notwithstanding the annual payment of a tribute of 23,000 dollars, had taken advantage of the war with Great Britain, in which America had been engaged, to commit hostilities against the United States, by plundering American vessels, and reducing their crews to captivity. Commodore Decatur sailed for the Mediterranean, with a squadron of nine vessels. On the 17th of June, off Cape de Gatt, he fell in with the Algerine frigate *Magouda*, which was captured by the *Guerriere* after an action of fifteen minutes. A piratical brig of twentytwo guns was soon after taken, by the light vessels of the squadron. Decatur arrived before the harbor of Algiers, at a time when the Dey's whole fleet was at sea. The Algerines were greatly alarmed at the captures already made, and fearing for the safety of their other vessels, they were obliged to submit to such terms as Decatur proposed. These terms were sufficiently honorable to America. No tribute was to be in future paid by the American government; all American captives were to be released without ransom; and compensation was to be made, for such vessels and property as had been taken or plundered.

At the next session of congress, an act was passed, establishing a Bank of the United States, with a capital  
1816 of thirtyfive millions. The charter of the old bank of the United States had been suffered to expire in 1811. During the war, there was no national bank; and the want of that aid, which this institution had been accustomed to afford, in the fiscal operations of the government, was very severely felt. The war had likewise brought the currency of the country into a very unfortunate and alarming situation. The state banks, allured by the enormous premium at which the government borrowed money, had made very extensive loans, and had issued, in consequence, such an abundance of their own notes, as to have become unable to pay specie for them, on demand. All the

\* In 1821, it was reduced to 6000.

banks south of New England, by an agreement among themselves, had suspended specie payments. The consequence of this measure was, a great depreciation in the value of their notes; and all the evils of a depreciated paper currency, which had been so severely felt during the revolutionary war, were now, to a considerable degree, experienced anew. Notwithstanding the restoration of peace, the banks were very reluctant to re-commence specie payments; and it was supposed that the establishment of a national bank, which should pay specie for its notes, would have a great tendency to compel the state banks to do the same. Influenced by these arguments, the bank was incorporated. At first, it was not very well managed; but under a new set of directors, it afterwards rose rapidly in the public esteem, and has been found to answer all the expectation of its friends.

On the 4th of March, 1817, Mr Madison was succeeded by Mr Monroe. Daniel D. Tompkins, of New  
1817 York, was chosen vice president. Mr Monroe's cabinet consisted of John Q. Adams, secretary of state, William H. Crawford, secretary of the treasury, John C. Calhoun, secretary of war, Benjamin W. Crowninshield, secretary of the navy, and Richard Rush, attorney general.

Immediately after the conclusion of the war, the people of the United States, so long debarred from the ocean, engaged with much zeal in a great variety of commercial business. But the changes in mercantile affairs, produced by the general peace in Europe, combined, with other causes, to make these speculations in trade, turn out much less fortunately than had been anticipated. The manufactories which had been established, and which had reached a very flourishing condition during the war, already began to sink under the weight of foreign competition. The complaint of hard times was in every body's mouth; and many were induced to seek a refuge against impending poverty in the fertile regions of the west. During the war, the unsettled country, north of Kentucky and south of Tennessee, had been frequently traversed, in various directions, by the American armies. The fertility of the lands had thus become known; and large cessions having been obtained from the Indians, a continued and copious flow of emigration was now kept up, in this direction. Indiana had been ad-

mitted into the union in 1816, and during the five following years, a new state was annually erected.

The first settlements within the bounds of Indiana, had been made at Vincennes, as long ago as the year 1700, by the French, who, at that time, claimed the whole valley of the Mississippi, as a part of their province of Louisiana. While the French kept possession of it, Vincennes was nothing more than a military post, and a place of trade with the Indians. After the peace of Greenville in 1795, settlements began to be formed within the limits of Indiana, along the banks of the Ohio, by emigrants from the United States. It was at first included in the territory northwest of the Ohio. In 1800, the territory of Indiana was erected, including what is now Indiana and Illinois. At the time of its erection, the population of the new territory did not exceed 6000. In 1809, Indiana was made a territory by itself, and in 1816, it was admitted into the union. Its population now exceeds 340,000.

The next state admitted into the union was Mississippi.

Here, too, the French were the earliest settlers. 1817 They had planted a colony at Natches in the year 1716. Thirteen years after, this settlement was entirely ruined by the Indians of the Natches tribe. But the injury did not pass unrevenged; for the next year, the Natches were nearly extirminated by the French. The town of Natches was rebuilt, and some other settlements were made in the neighborhood; but the country remained in a great measure, a wilderness till the peace of 1763, when it came into the hands of the English. They claimed it as a part of the newly ceded province of Florida; and several settlements were begun by English colonists, along the banks of the Mississippi. But these settlements were greatly impeded, first, by the breaking out of the revolutionary war, and afterwards, by disputes with the Spaniards. In 1800, the country south of Tennessee, and west of Georgia, was erected into the Mississippi territory. It then contained a population of less than 9000; and except a few spots on the left bank of the Mississippi, was an entire wilderness, and was occupied by the Creeks, and other powerful tribes of Indians. By 1810, the population had increased to 40,000, but was still confined to the southwest corner of the territory. In 1817, Alabama was separated from the Mississippi

territory, and the remaining portion was erected into the state of Mississippi.

Illinois, like the rest of the western country, was first explored by the French, and before the year 1700, trading houses had been established at Kaskaskia, and some other places. When separated from the Indiana territory in 1809, it contained a population of about 12,000. Since that time its increase has been rapid. It was erected into a state in 1819, and now numbers more than 161,000 people; but this population is confined, in a great measure, to the southern portion of the state.

A large portion of those fertile lands which were ceded to the United States at the end of the Creek war, were included within the limits of Alabama; and immediately after the peace, they began to be very rapidly peopled by emigrants from the states. Previous to the war, this state had been almost a wilderness; but when admitted to the union in 1819, it already numbered over 100,000 people; and its population now exceeds 300,000.

In 1820, Maine was separated from Massachusetts, and erected into an independent state. Some of the towns along the coast of Maine are of equal antiquity with any other part of New England; but the inland settlements are comparatively new. More than half the state, including all the more northern part, is still a wilderness.

The state most recently admitted into the union is Missouri. When the subject of the admission of this state was before congress, a question arose whether slavery should be allowed to prevail there. This matter was debated at great length, and with great warmth. It produced a serious excitement in every part of the United States; but finally ended in this compromise, — that slavery should be allowed in Missouri; but should be excluded from all the other territory of the United States, west of the Mississippi, and north of Arkansas.

Besides the extensive settlements that were in progress in the country already in their possession, the United States obtained, about this time, an addition to their territories, by the cession of Florida. This cession had been for several years a subject of negotiation; and after a long series of delays, the treaty was finally ratified on the 22d of February, 1821. Florida was ceded to the United States as a

compensation for the spoiliations under Spanish authority, committed on the commerce of the United States during the time of the Berlin and Milan decrees; and in consideration of the treaty, five millions of dollars were appropriated by the American government, to satisfy the claims of the merchants.

Considered merely as an extension of territory, this cession was of but little importance. But a great object was obtained in relieving the southern frontier of the United States from the depredations of renegado Indians, runaway negroes, pirates, and other desperate characters, who were accustomed to assemble in Florida, and to carry on their depredations, always without being discouraged by the Spanish authorities, and often, with their actual assistance.\* The naval and maritime advantages to be expected from the possession of Florida, are also of very considerable importance.

The suffering condition of many of the old revolutionary soldiers, had attracted the public attention; and Mr Monroe, in one of his earliest messages, had recommended the subject to the consideration of congress. A law was accordingly passed in 1818, which, with some subsequent modifications, still continues in force, for allowing a pension to every surviving officer and soldier who had served during the revolutionary war, for a period of nine months, on the continental establishment; and whose circumstances were such as to require relief. Twenty dollars a month are allowed to officers, and twelve to privates; and this act of justice and gratitude, though late, and in many respects inadequate, reflects no inconsiderable credit upon the nation.

As the presidential term of Mr Monroe drew near a close, a very warm canvass for the succession was commenced. Four candidates divided the votes of the electors. — Mr Crawford, of Georgia, who had the advantage of being the regularly nominated candidate; general Jackson, whose military exploits had made him a great favorite, especially at the southwest; Mr Adams, the secretary of state; and Mr Clay, the speaker of the house of representatives. General Jackson had the highest number of votes, but not a

\* The government had been several times obliged to send parties of troops into Florida to suppress the depredations of these desperadoes; and the famous *Seminole war* had a similar object.



majority ; and according to the provisions of the constitution, a choice was to be made by the house of representatives from among the three candidates having the highest number of votes. As Mr Clay had a less number of votes than either of his competitors, of course he was excluded from the list. His friends united with those of Mr Adams, to raise that gentleman to the presidential chair. Mr Calhoun, of South Carolina, was chosen vice president by a large majority. He had, at first, been nominated as a candidate for the presidency, but his claims to that office had been subsequently withdrawn.

Several incidents occurred during the four years of Mr Adams' administration, which might well deserve a particular narration ; but these times are too recent for the voice of impartial history. During the whole four years, a warm contest was kept up, both in the halls of congress and elsewhere, between the friends of Mr Adams and those of general Jackson. For some time the event was uncertain ; but at the next presidential election, general Jackson prevailed by a large majority ; and on the fourth of March, 1829, he was inaugurated Seventh President of the United States.

THE END.

## APPENDIX.

---

### NO. I. KINGS OF ENGLAND, FRANCE AND SPAIN, DURING THE TIMES OF THE COLONIES.

<i>Kings of England.</i>	<i>Kings of France.</i>
1485. Henry VII.	1483. Charles VIII.
1509. Henry VIII.	1498. Louis XII.
1547. Edward VI.	1515. Francis I.
1553. Mary.	1547. Henry II.
1558. Elizabeth.	1559. Francis II.
1603. James I.	1560. Charles IX.
1625. Charles I.	1574. Henry III.
1642. The civil war.	1589. Henry IV.
1649. The Commonwealth.	1610. Louis XIII.
1660. Charles II.	1643. Louis XIV.
1685. James II.	1715. Louis XV.
1688. William III.	1774. Louis XVI.
1702. Anne.	
1714. George I.	
1727. George II.	
1759. George III.	

---

<i>Kings of Spain.</i>	
1479. Ferdinand and Isabella.	1665. Charles II.
1516. Charles I.*	1700. Philip V.
1555. Philip II.	1746. Ferdinand VI.
1598. Philip III.	1759. Charles III.
1621. Philip IV.	

\* This prince was also emperor of Germany, where he bore the title of Charles V. and by this name he is most commonly known.

NO. II. PRESIDENTS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS,  
*from 1774 to 1789.*

	<i>From</i>	<i>Elected</i>
Peyton Randolph,	Virginia,	Sept. 5, 1774.
John Hancock,	Massachusetts,	May 24, 1775.
Henry Laurens,	South Carolina,	Nov. 1, 1777.
John Jay,	New York,	Dec. 10, 1778.
Samuel Huntington,	Connecticut,	Sept. 28, 1779.
Thomas M'Kean,	Delaware,	July 10, 1781.
John Hanson,	Maryland,	Nov. 5, 1781.
Elias Boudinot,	New Jersey,	Nov. 4, 1782.
Thomas Mifflin,	Pennsylvania,	Nov. 3, 1783.
Richard Henry Lee,	Virginia,	Nov. 30, 1786.
Nathaniel Gorham,	Massachusetts,	June 6, 1786.
Arthur St Clair,	Pennsylvania,	Feb. 2, 1787.
Cyrus Griffin,	Virginia,	Jan. 22, 1788.

NO. III. PRINCIPAL OFFICERS UNDER THE FEDERAL  
CONSTITUTION.

*First Administration.*

GEORGE WASHINGTON,	Virginia,	April 30, 1789.	President.
John Adams,	Massachusetts,	" "	Vice President.
Thomas Jefferson,	Virginia,	Sept. 26, 1789.	} Secretaries of State.
Edmund Randolph,	"	Jan. 2, 1794.	
Timothy Pickering,	Massachusetts,	Dec. 10, 1795.	
Alexander Hamilton,	New York,	Sept. 11, 1789.	} Secretaries of the Treasury.
Oliver Wolcott,	Connecticut,	Feb. 3, 1795.	
Henry Knox,	Massachusetts,	Sept. 12, 1789.	} Secretaries of War.
Timothy Pickering,	"	Jan. 2, 1795.	
James M'Henry,	Maryland,	Jan. 27, 1796.	
Edmund Randolph,	Virginia,	Sept. 26, 1789.	} Attorneys General.
William Bradford,	Pennsylvania,	Jan. 27, 1794.	
Charles Lee,	Virginia,	Dec. 10, 1795.	

*Second Administration.*

JOHN ADAMS,	Massachusetts,	March 4, 1797.	President.
Thomas Jefferson,	"	" "	Vice President.
Timothy Pickering,			} Secretaries of State.
John Marshall,	Virginia,	May 13, 1800.	
Oliver Wolcott,			} Secretaries of the Treasury.
Samuel Dexter,	Massachusetts,	Dec. 31, 1800.	
James M'Henry,			} Secretaries of War.
Samuel Dexter,		May 13, 1800.	
Roger Griswold,	Connecticut,	Feb. 3, 1801.	

Benjamin Stoddert, Maryland,	May 21, 1798.	{ Secretary of the Navy.
Charles Lee,		{ Attorney General.

---

*Third Administration.*

THOMAS JEFFERSON,	March 4, 1801.	President.
Aaron Burr, New York,	" "	{ Vice Presidents.
George Clinton, "	" 1805.	
James Madison, Virginia,	March 5, 1801.	{ Secretary of State.
Samuel Dexter, Albert Gallatin, Pennsylvania,	Jan. 26, 1802.	{ Secretaries of the Treasury.
Henry Dearborn, Massachusetts,	March 5, 1801.	{ Secretary of War.
Benjamin Stoddert, Robert Smith, Maryland,	Jan. 26, 1802.	{ Secretaries of the Navy.
Levi Lincoln, Massachusetts,	March 5, 1801.	{ Attorneys General.
John Breckenridge, Kentucky,	Dec. 23, 1805.	
Cæsar A. Rodney, Delaware,	Jan. 20, 1807.	

---

*Fourth Administration.*

JAMES MADISON,	March 4, 1809.	President.
George Clinton, Elbridge Gerry, Massachusetts,	" "	{ Vice Presidents.
Robert Smith, Maryland,	March 6, 1809.	
James Monroe, Virginia,	Nov. 25, 1811.	{ Secretaries of State.
Albert Gallatin, G. W. Campbell, Tennessee,	Feb. 9, 1814.	{ Secretaries of the Treasury.
Alexander J. Dallas, Pennsylvania,	Oct. 6, 1814.	
William Eustis, Massachusetts,	March 7, 1809.	{ Secretaries of War.
John Armstrong, New York,	Jan. 13, 1813.	
James Monroe,	Sept. 27, 1814.	
W. H. Crawford, Georgia,	March 2, 1815.	
Paul Hamilton, South Carolina,	March 7, 1809.	{ Secretaries of the Navy.
William Jones, Pennsylvania,	Jan. 12, 1813.	
B. W. Crowninshield, Massachusetts,	Dec. 19, 1814.	
Cæsar A. Rodney, William Pinkney, Maryland,	Dec. 11, 1811.	{ Attorneys General.
Richard Rush, Pennsylvania,	Feb. 10, 1814.	

---

*Fifth Administration.*

JAMES MONROE,	March 4, 1817.	President.
Daniel D. Tompkins, New York,		Vice President.
John Quincy Adams, Massachusetts,	March 5, 1817.	{ Secretary of State.

William H. Crawford,		March 5, 1812.	{ Secretary the Treasury,
John C. Calhoun,	South Carolina,	March 5, 1817.	{ Secretary of War.
B. W. Crowninshield,			{ Secretaries of the Navy.
Smith Thompson,	New York,	Nov. 30, 1818.	
Samuel L. Southard,	New Jersey,	Dec. 9, 1823.	
Richard Rush,			{ Attorneys General.
William Wirt,	Virginia,	Dec. 16, 1817.	

*Sixth Administration.*

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS,		March 4, 1825.	President.
John C. Calhoun,		" "	Vice President.
Henry Clay,	Kentucky,	March 8, 1825.	{ Secretary of State.
Richard Rush,		March 7, "	{ Secretary of the Treasury.
James Barbour,	Virginia,	March 7, "	{ Secretaries of War.
Peter B. Porter,	New York,	May 26, 1828.	
Samuel L. Southard,			{ Secretary of the Navy.
William Wirt,			{ Attorney General.

*Seventh Administration.*

ANDREW JACKSON,	Tennessee,	March 4, 1829.	President.
John C. Calhoun,		" "	Vice President.
Martin Van Buren,	New York,	March 6, 1829.	{ Secretaries of State.
Edward Livingston,	Louisiana,	May, 1831.	
Samuel D. Ingham,	Pennsylvania,	March 6, 1829.	{ Secretaries of the Treasury.
Louis M' Lane,	Delaware,	May 1831.	
John H. Eaton,	Tennessee,	March 9, 1829.	{ Secretaries of War.
Hugh L. White,	"	1831.	
John Branch,	North Carolina,	March 9, 1828.	{ Secretaries of the Navy.
Levi Woodbury,	N. Hampshire,	May, 1831.	
John M'P. Berrien,	Georgia,	March 9, 1829.	{ Attorneys General.
R. B. Taney,	Maryland,	1831.	

*Chief Justices of the United States.*

John Jay,	New York.	Sept. 26, 1789.
William Cushing,	Massachusetts.	Jan. 22, 1796.
Oliver Ellsworth,	Connecticut.	March 4, 1796.
John Marshall,	Virginia.	Jan. 27, 1801.

*Ministers to France.*

Gouverneur Morris,	of New Jersey.	Jan.	12, 1792.
James Monroe,	" Virginia.	May	28, 1704.
Charles C. Pinkney,	" South Carolina.	Sept.	9, 1796.
Charles C. Pinkney,	" " "	}	June 5, 1797.
Elbridge Gerry,	" Massachusetts.		
John Marshall,	" Virginia.		
Oliver Ellsworth,	" Connecticut.		
William Vans Murray,	" Maryland.	}	Feb. 26, 1799.
William R. Davie,	" North Carolina.		
James A. Bayard,	" Delaware.	Feb.	19, 1801.
Robert R. Livingston,	" New York.	Oct.	2, 1801.
John Armstrong,	" " "	June	30, 1804.
Joel Barlow,	" Connecticut.	Feb.	27, 1811.
William H. Crawford,	" Georgia.	April	9, 1813.
Albert Gallatin,	" Pennsylvania.	Feb.	28, 1815.
James Brown,	" Louisiana.	Dec.	9, 1823.
William C. Rives,	" Virginia.		1829.

*Ministers to Great Britain.*

Gouverneur Morris,	of New Jersey.	Oct.	13, 1789.
Thomas Pinkney,	" South Carolina.	Jan.	12, 1792.
John Jay,	" New York.	April	19, 1794.
Rufus King,	" " "	May	20, 1796.
James Monroe,	" Virginia.	April	18, 1803.
James Monroe,	" " "	}	May 12, 1806.
William Pinkney,	" Maryland.		
William Pinkney,	" " "	Feb.	26, 1808.
John Quincy Adams,	" Massachusetts.	Feb.	28, 1815.
Richard Rush,	" Pennsylvania.	Dec.	16, 1817.
Rufus King,	" New York.	May	5, 1825.
Albert Gallatin,	" Pennsylvania.	May	18, 1826.
James Barbour,	" Virginia.	May	23, 1828.
Louis McLane,	" Delaware.		1829.

## NO. IV. POPULATION OF THE UNITED STATES.

1776.	Estimated at	.	.	.	.	.	3,000,000.
1790.	Census,	.	.	.	.	.	3,929,326.
1800.	"	.	.	.	.	.	5,319,762.
1810.	"	.	.	.	.	.	7,239,903.
1820.	"	.	.	.	.	.	9,708,135.
1830.	"	.	.	.	.	.	13,000,000.

# QUESTIONS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

1. When was America discovered?
2. What effect did the discovery produce in Europe?
3. In what did the claims of England to the continent of North America originate?
4. Give an account of that voyage.
5. Who discovered Florida?
6. What claims were founded on this discovery?
7. In what did the claims of France originate?
8. Give an account of those voyages.
9. Who discovered the river Mississippi?
10. Give an account of Soto's expedition.
11. What is said of the Newfoundland fisheries?
12. What was the appearance of the country?
13. By whom was it inhabited? why were they called Indians?
14. Give an account of the inhabitants.
15. Where, when, and by whom was the first settlement attempted to be made within the present limits of the United States?
16. Give an account of Sir Humphrey Gilbert, and of his proceedings.
17. Give an account of Raleigh's attempts to plant a colony.
18. How was the use of tobacco introduced into England?
19. What is said of Gosnold's voyage? of Richard Hacluyt?
20. What companies were formed? when? and by whom?

## CHAPTER II.

1. What was done by the London company?
2. Where did the colony land? what is the present state of Jamestown?
3. Give an account of captain Smith.
4. What effect was produced by the supposed discovery of gold dust?
5. Who first explored Chesapeake bay?
6. Give an account of the voyage of Gates, Somers and Newport? what sort of settlers did they bring?
7. What was the consequence of their coming?
8. Why did Smith leave Virginia? what was the state of the colony when he left it? to what state was it afterwards reduced?
9. What important events happened in 1613?
10. What was the situation of the colony at the arrival of Argal?
11. Who called the first colonial assembly? of whom did it consist?
12. What is said about the importation of females?
13. What and when was the beginning of Negro slavery?
14. What was now the extent of the settlements?

15. Give an account of the Indian war.
16. What is said of the Indians of Virginia?
17. Who were the first royal governors? what is said of Sir William Berkeley?
18. What was the situation of Virginia during the civil wars?
19. Give an account of the settlement of Maryland.

### CHAPTER III.

1. What were the proceedings of the Plymouth company?
2. In what originated the name of New England?
3. Give an account of the Puritans.
4. What is said of Mr Robinson's congregation? to what sect did they belong?
5. Give an account of their voyage to America.
6. Where did they land? what did they do before landing?
7. Give an account of their settlement — what was the name of their colony? by what name are they often called?
8. What is said of their intercourse with the Indians?
9. Who was their first governor? their military leader? give an account of his proceedings.
10. What was the situation of the colony at the end of four years?
11. What is said of the settlers at Plymouth?
12. What other attempts to colonize New England?
13. Whence originated the colony of Massachusetts bay?
14. Where, when, and by whom was the first settlement made?
15. Where was the next settlement made?
16. Who arrived the next year? where did they land? did they continue there?
17. What towns were earliest settled?
18. What is said of the sufferings of the earlier settlers? of their character?
19. What arrangement was made for enacting laws, &c?
20. Give an account of the colony of Connecticut — its government.
21. To whom had the territory been granted? what became of their grant?
22. Give an account of Roger Williams — of the colony of Providence.
23. What is said of the Pequods? of the Narragansets?
24. What was the origin of the Pequod war?
25. What was done by the Connecticut troops? by those of Massachusetts?
26. What is said of this war?
27. Give an account of Mrs Hutchinson — of the court of elections in 1637 — of the synod at Cambridge.
28. Give an account of the settlement of Rhode Island — of New Hampshire.
29. Give an account of the colony of New Haven.
30. When and why did emigration to New England cease?
31. What was now the state of the colonies?
32. What combination did they form? for what reasons?
33. What is said of the province of Maine?



34. What is said of the New England Indians? what efforts were made in their behalf? by whom? with what success?
35. Give an account of the persecution of the Quakers.
36. Was persecution for religious opinions confined to New England?
37. What was the number and situation of the colonies at the Restoration?

## CHAPTER IV.

1. How was the restoration regarded in the colonies?
2. Give an account of the navigation act — how was it regarded?
3. Give an account of the province of New Netherlands — of the Swedish settlements on the Delaware.
4. To whom was this territory granted? what was done in consequence of the grant?
5. Give an account of the proceedings of governor Nicolls.
6. What is said of New York?
7. Give an account of the grant and settlement of New Jersey?
8. What was the next colony?
9. Give an account of its settlement.
10. What was the state of Virginia?
11. Give an account of Bacon's rebellion.

## CHAPTER V.

1. What commissioners were appointed to visit New England?
2. Give an account of king Philip.
3. What was the origin of the war with the Indians?
4. Where was the first attack made?
5. Give an account of the first expedition against Philip.
6. Which side did the Narragansets take?
7. Give an account of the progress of the war.
8. What other tribes took part in it?
9. What was done by the commissioners of the colonies?
10. Give an account of the attack on the Narragansets.
11. What expeditions were made from Connecticut? who was taken prisoner?
12. How was the war ended? what was its effect on New England? what other troubles did Massachusetts experience?
13. When and why was New Hampshire made a distinct province?
14. Give an account of the settlement of Pennsylvania.
15. What progress did this colony make?
16. What is said of Delaware?
17. What is said of the government of Charles II. and James II.?
18. Who was appointed governor of New England?
19. How was he received?
20. How did his government terminate?
21. What was done at New York?
22. What became of Leisler and Milbourn?
23. What is said of the new charter of Massachusetts?
24. Give an account of the Salem witchcraft.

## CHAPTER VI.

1. What was the effect upon the colonies on the accession of king William?
2. What is said of the attempts of the French to plant colonies in America?
3. How many colonies had they? what were they?
4. What is said of Acadie? of Canada?
5. What was the relative strength of the French and English colonies?
6. What enabled the French to resist so long the efforts of the English to conquer Canada?
7. Give an account of the Five Nations.
8. What, at this time, was the population of the colonies?
9. Who was governor of Canada? what expeditions did he fit out? with what success?
10. For what did commissioners meet at New York? what is said of this meeting?
11. What were the events and termination of this war?
12. When and why was war renewed?
13. Give an account of the destruction of Deerfield — what other towns destroyed?
14. What expeditions were undertaken by the English?
15. Where and when was peace concluded?
16. What was the situation of the middle colonies? of Carolina?
17. What conspiracies were formed for the destruction of Carolina?
18. By what other circumstance was the tranquillity of Carolina disturbed?
19. How was this evil remedied?

## CHAPTER VII.

1. What was the situation of New England?
2. What new war with the Indians? how did it originate?
3. What was its termination?
4. What controversy in Massachusetts?
5. What was its event?
6. What new colony settled? by whom? for what purpose?
7. What were the incidents of the Spanish war? of the third French and Indian war?
8. What expedition was undertaken? by whom? by whom commanded? what was its event?
9. How were the colonies alarmed?
10. When and where was peace concluded?

## CHAPTER VIII.

1. What dispute existed between the French and English?
2. Give an account of Louisiana.
3. What design was entertained by the French? what was the relative strength of the French and English colonies?

4. What measures did the French take ?
5. What was done by the governor of Virginia ? what answer was sent ?
6. What was the next step ? what was the event of the expedition ?
7. What scheme was entertained ? give an account of it.
8. What colony first took the field ? give an account of the French neutrals ?
9. What was done with them ?
10. Who was appointed to command in America ? what expeditions were planned ? by whom ?
11. Give an account of the first — of the second — of the third.
12. What forts taken by Montcalm ? where were these forts situated ?
13. Who succeeded Braddock ? how many forces had he under his command ?
14. What expedition was first undertaken ? what attempt was made by Abercrombie ? what was the result ?
15. What fort taken by the French ? where situated ?
16. What fort taken the next year ?
17. Who commanded the expedition against Quebec ?
18. What is the situation of that city ?
19. What attempts were made by Wolfe ? what plan was finally resolved upon ?
20. Give an account of the battle — what was its result ?
21. Give an account of the battle of Sillery.
22. What expedition undertaken by the English ? what was its result ?
23. What war at the south ?
24. When was peace concluded ?
25. What war with the Indians ? who was their leader ? what was its event ?

## CHAPTER IX.

1. What were the expectations of the colonists at the termination of the French war ?
2. How were these expectations fulfilled ?
3. What was the nature of the connexion between the colonies and the mother country ?
4. What authority was exercised by the English parliament ?
5. What rights were claimed by the colonists ?
6. Give an account of the stamp act.
7. How was it received in America ?
8. What measure was taken by the colonists ?
9. Who was president, and what was done ?
10. When was the stamp act repealed ?
11. What other acts were passed ?
12. What was the consequence ?
13. What measure was taken by the British ministers ?
14. Was it satisfactory ?
15. What event occurred at Boston ?
16. Give an account of the insurrection in North Carolina.
17. Was this event connected with the opposition to the British ministry ?

18. What measure was taken to introduce tea into the colonies?
19. How were the vessels received?
20. What was done at Boston?
21. What acts of parliament were passed in consequence?
22. What measure taken by the colonists?
23. Who was president of the congress, and what did it do?
24. Give an account of the battle of Lexington — what was the consequence of this battle?
25. What important forts were seized, and by whom?
26. Give an account of the battle of Bunker hill.
27. What measures were taken by congress?
28. What is said of the Canadians?
29. Give an account of Montgomery's proceedings — of Arnold's.
30. Describe the assault on Quebec.
31. What became of the American army?
32. How was the siege of Boston terminated?
33. Give an account of the attack on Charleston?
34. Who moved the question of independence?
35. By whom was it advocated? by whom opposed?
36. When was independence declared?
37. Who wrote the declaration?
38. What was the population of the United States, and the extent of the settlements?

## CHAPTER X.

1. Who succeeded to the command of the British forces?
2. Towards what point did he move?
3. How large was his army? of whom was it composed?
4. What was the strength and state of the American army?
5. Give an account of the battle of Long Island.
6. What was the consequence of this battle?
7. What movement made by Howe?
8. What step did Washington take?
9. What happened on the march to White Plains?
10. What design formed by Howe?
11. Give an account of the storm of fort Washington.
12. What step taken by Washington?
13. What station occupied by the American army?
14. What message sent to Lee? how did he execute it?
15. What was the situation of the British army?
16. Give an account of the battle of Trenton.
17. What were the consequences of this battle?
18. How were the armies situated the evening preceding the battle of Princeton?
19. Give an account of the battle of Princeton.
20. What step taken by Cornwallis?
21. What was the state of the American army?
22. What position taken by Washington?
23. What circumstance caused Washington great embarrassment?
24. What measures taken for improving the army?
25. What was Washington's condition while encamped at Morristown?
26. What station on the Hudson occupied by the Americans?

27. What expeditions undertaken by the British ?
28. What by the Americans ?
29. What movement made by Washington ?
30. What were the proceedings of Howe ?
31. Where did the British land ? at what distance from Philadelphia ?
32. What position taken by Washington ?
33. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine ?
34. What is said of the behaviour of the troops ?
35. What movements made by Washington ? what loss experienced ?
36. What position taken by the two armies ? what was the consequence ?
37. What defences on the river Delaware ?
38. Give an account of the battle of Germantown.
39. To what was the defeat of the Americans owing ?
40. To what was the attention of the armies now directed ?
41. Give an account of the attack on the forts.
42. What was the final result ?

## CHAPTER IX.

1. How were affairs situated at the north in June, 1776 ?
2. Who commanded the lake ?
3. What measures taken by Carleton ?
4. Give an account of the naval action.
5. What step taken by Carleton ?
6. What became of the northern army ?
7. What plan formed by the British cabinet ?
8. What was the state of the northern army ?
9. What fortress invested by Burgoyne ? by whom commanded ?
10. What measure taken by St Clair ?
11. What was the result of the retreat ?
12. Describe the action at Hubbardton.
13. Where did the American forces concentrate ?
14. What was the nature of the country between this place and Skenesborough ?
15. What measures taken by Schuyler ?
16. What reinforcements sent to the northern army ?
17. What expedition undertaken by St Leger ?
18. What was done by Schuyler ?
19. What attempt made by Burgoyne ? for what reason ?
20. Give an account of the action.
21. How did St Leger's expedition terminate ?
22. Who succeeded Schuyler ? why was he superseded ?
23. What action fought ? give an account of it.
24. What other action ? describe the battle.
26. What attempt made by Burgoyne ?
27. How did his expedition terminate ?
28. What successes of the British on the Hudson ?
29. What became of the northern army ?
30. Where did Washington go into winter quarters ? describe the place.

## CHAPTER XII.

1. What is said of the states? of congress? of the confederation?
2. What was the great defect of this system?
3. What is said of the requisitions of congress?
4. How were funds raised to support the war?
5. What is said of the loyalists? where were they most numerous?
6. What is said of the Indians? what tribes were most to be dreaded?
7. Which side did the Six Nations take? of what atrocities were they guilty?
8. What was done by the Creeks and Cherokees?
9. What difficulties relating to the exchange of prisoners?
10. What is said of maritime affairs?
11. What had been the effect of the non-importation agreements?
12. What success had the American cruisers?
13. What was the condition of the army?
14. What measures was Washington driven to in order to support his army?
15. What efforts did he make?
16. What combination formed? by whom? for what purpose?
17. What effect did the resistance of the states produce in Europe?
18. Who had been sent commissioners to France?
19. What success did they meet with?
20. What measure taken by lord North?
21. What terms were offered? how were they received?
22. What offer made to Mr Read? what was his reply?

## CHAPTER XIII.

1. What was the situation of the two armies at the beginning of the year 1773?
2. Who succeeded to the command of the British army?
3. What resolution did he take?
4. By what road did he march? what measure taken by Washington?
5. What battle fought? describe it.
6. What loss did the British experience during the march?
7. What aids arrived from France?
8. What expedition undertaken?
9. What was the event?
10. Give an account of Wyoming, and the destruction of the settlements there.
11. To what quarter was the theatre of war now transferred?
12. What is said of the southern campaigns?
13. Give an account of the conquest of Savannah.
14. Who was appointed to the southern department?
15. In what state did he find affairs? from whom did he receive assistance?
16. What plan of operations did he form?
17. What is said of the loyalists of the Carolinas?
18. Give an account of the action at Briar's creek.

19. What enterprise undertaken by Prevost ? with what success ?
20. What was done by the British armies further north ?
21. What British posts taken ?
22. Who was sent against the Six Nations ? with what success ?
23. What assistance arrives from France ?
24. What expedition undertaken ? what was the event ?
25. What nation takes part in the war ?
26. What prevented Spain from acknowledging the independence of the United States ?
27. Who was sent minister to that court ?

## CHAPTER XIV.

1. What expedition undertaken by Sir Henry Clinton ?
2. Give an account of the operations against Charleston.
3. What was the consequence of the surrender of Charleston ?
4. Who maintained a partisan warfare against the British ?
5. What preparations for forming a new army ?
6. Who succeeded Lincoln in the command of the southern department ?
7. Give an account of the battle of Camden.
8. Give an account of the treason of Arnold.
9. Who succeeded Gates in the command of the southern army ?
10. What measure taken by Greene ?
11. What attempt made in consequence by Cornwallis ?
12. Give an account of the battle of the Cowpens.
13. Describe the retreat of the Americans.
14. Give an account of the battle of Guilford.
15. What measure taken by Greene after this battle ?
16. What measure taken by Cornwallis ?
17. Give an account of the battle of Hobkirk Hill.
18. What posts taken by the Americans ?
19. Give an account of the siege of Ninety-six.
20. Where was the last battle fought ? give an account of it.
21. What is said of the conduct of general Greene ? of the army ? of the people at large ?

## CHAPTER XV.

1. What occasioned the revolt of the Pennsylvania line ?
2. How did the revolt terminate ?
3. What changes made in the executive departments ?
4. What is said of Robert Morris ?
5. With whom did Cornwallis unite after entering Virginia ?
6. To whom was the defence of this state entrusted ?
7. What movements made by the two armies ?
8. What position finally taken by the British ?
9. What expedition meditated by Washington ?
10. What plan substituted ?

11. What expedition sent against Connecticut?
12. Give an account of the capture of fort Griswold.
13. By whom was the allied army commanded?
14. What is the situation of Yorktown?
15. Give an account of the siege? how did it terminate?
16. What vote passed by the British house of Commons?
17. By whom was the treaty of peace negotiated?
18. By what circumstance was the negotiation retarded?
19. When was the peace proclaimed?
20. What is said of the revolutionary struggle?
21. What discontents prevailed in the army? how were they suppressed?
22. What is said of the half pay of the officers?
23. What pay did the soldiers receive on being disbanded?
24. Where and when did Washington resign his commission?

## CHAPTER XVI.

1. What is said of the confederation? of congress?
2. What difficulties existed with Great Britain?
3. What is said of the trade of the United States?
4. What was the state of public sentiment?
5. What commissioners appointed? by whom? for what purpose?
6. What did they recommend? what was done in consequence?
7. What was the result of the meeting?
8. What was the state of the country? what insurrections?
9. What convention was assembled? when? who was president?
10. Give an account of its proceedings?
11. Into what parties was the country divided? what efforts made by each of these parties?
12. What essays published? by whom? what was their effect?
13. What is said of the state conventions?

## CHAPTER XVII.

1. What is said of the first congress under the new constitution?
2. What was the first business of the senate?
3. Who were the president and vice president elect?
4. What is said of Washington's journey? of his reception at Trenton?
5. Of whom was the first congress composed?
6. What acts were passed? what officers of state appointed by Washington?
7. Give an account of the public debt.
8. What plan was proposed by Mr Hamilton?
9. What opinions were entertained on this subject?
10. What arguments were used on either side?
11. Was the plan accepted? under what circumstances?
12. What is said of the state of the country?



13. What is said of the Indians? what treaty was concluded? who was chief of this tribe?
14. What tribes continued hostile? what measures were taken?
15. What acts passed? by whom recommended?
16. Give an account of Vermont — of Kentucky.
17. What is said of the population of the United States? the revenue? commerce? shipping?

## CHAPTER XVIII.

1. What measure taken against the Indians?
2. Give an account of St Clair's expedition.
3. Where was the battle fought?
4. What measures taken by congress?
5. What is said of the distinction of parties? who were the leaders? what is said of them?
6. What names taken by the parties?
7. What did they say of one another? were these accusations well founded?
8. What were the measures of the president's cabinet?
9. What laws particularly obnoxious?
10. What opposition was made to them? what was done by the president?
11. What charges brought against Hamilton? were they sustained?
12. What is said of the presidential election?
13. What event began to affect the politics of America?
14. How was this revolution regarded?
15. What other sentiment combined with this difference respecting France?
16. What measure proposed in consequence?
17. What proclamation published by the president? for what reasons?
18. How was this measure regarded?
19. Who excited the public mind at this time? give an account of his proceedings.
20. How did his mission terminate?
21. What was the last official act of Mr Jefferson?
22. What difficulties with Great Britain?
23. What measure determined on by the president?
24. Who was sent on this mission?
25. What other disputed points? what is said of neutral rights? of impressment?
26. When and why did Mr Hamilton resign?

## CHAPTER XIX.

1. What difficulties with Spain?
2. Give an account of the Kentucky remonstrance?
3. What other embarrassing circumstances?

4. What was the state of the Indian war ?
5. What measure taken by general Wayne ?
6. Where were the Indians stationed ?
7. Give an account of the battle ?
8. What discontents in Pennsylvania ? what measures taken by the disaffected ? by the president ?
9. What proposal made ? was it accepted ?
10. Where and under whose command did the militia assemble ?
11. What was the result ?
12. What was done by Mr Jay ?
13. What was the state of the public mind respecting the treaty ?
14. What defects especially condemned ?
15. What measures taken by the people ? by Washington ?
16. What is said of his conduct on this occasion ?
17. What treaties made, and with whom ?
18. What were the proceedings of congress respecting Jay's treaty ?
19. What embarrassments had now been overcome ?
20. What is said of our relations with France ? of the opinions entertained on this subject ?
21. What new appointments made ? why ?
22. Give an account of Tennessee.
23. What is said of the presidential canvass ?
24. What was its result ?

## CHAPTER XX.

1. What was the first measure of the new president ?
2. What was the situation of affairs with France ?
3. What measure resolved on ?
4. What was the reception of the envoys ?
5. What intimations made to them ?
6. How did the mission terminate ?
7. What effect produced by the news of this event ?
8. What measures taken ? What naval actions ?
9. What was done by the French Directory ?
10. What measure did Mr Adams take ?
11. What opinion entertained respecting this measure ?
12. What was the result of the mission ?
13. When did Washington die ?
14. What removal made and when ?
15. What is said of the presidential canvass ?
16. What was the origin of Mr Adams' unpopularity ?
17. What measure taken by him ? with what success ?
18. What was the last official act of Mr Adams ?

## CHAPTER XXI.

1. How did the votes for president stand ?
2. Give an account of the ballot by the representatives ?

3. What was the final result ?
4. What measures were now taken ?
5. Of whom did Mr Jefferson's cabinet consist ?
6. Give an account of Ohio.
7. What territory added to the United States ?
8. What circumstance preceded and caused this purchase ?
9. What opposition made to it ?
10. What were its effects ?
11. What explorations made ?
12. What war existed at this time ?
13. Give an account of the loss of the Philadelphia.
14. What exploit accomplished by Decatur ?
15. What expedition by land against Tripoli ?
16. Give an account of Col. Burr and his trial.

## CHAPTER XXII.

1. What is said of American commerce ?
2. What unfortunate circumstance in the state of parties ?
3. What attempt to renew the treaty with Great Britain ?
4. What was its result ?
5. What was the situation of Europe ?
6. What plan formed by Bonaparte ?
7. What decree issued by him ?
8. What were its provisions ? how was it regarded ?
9. What negotiations had been carried on respecting impressment ?
10. What event occurred at this time in our own waters ?
11. Give an account of it.
12. What effect produced by it ?
13. What measures taken by the president ? by the British government ?
14. Give an account of the Orders in Council — of the Milan decree.
15. What was the effect of these edicts ?
16. What pretensions were made by the two nations ?
17. What measure taken by the American government ?
18. What was the operation of this measure on the country ? on the belligerents ?
19. What new decree issued by Bonaparte ? under what pretence ?
20. What measure substituted for the embargo ?
21. Who succeeded Mr Madison ?
22. Who composed the new cabinet ?
23. What arrangement made with Mr Erskine ?
24. With what result ?
25. What new decree issued by Bonaparte ?
26. Under what pretence ?
27. Give an account of the act of May, 1810.
28. What was done by the French government ?
29. What embarrassing circumstances attended the alleged repeal ?
30. What measures taken by the American government ?
31. What arrangement made by Mr Foster ?

32. In what did the reparation consist?
33. Give an account of the affair of the Little Belt.
34. How did affairs stand with the Indians?
35. What remarkable chiefs headed the confederacy?
36. What measure taken by governor Harrison?
37. Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe.
38. What measure taken against Great Britain?
39. What news arrived soon after?
40. What effect did it produce?
41. What new state added to the union?

## CHAPTER XXIII.

1. Under what circumstances did the war commence?
2. What was the state of the army and navy?
3. What opposition was made to the war?
4. In what did it originate?
5. What party formed? what was its conduct?
6. What plan of finance proposed by Mr Gallatin?
7. What officers were first appointed to command?
8. What plan of operations was proposed?
9. Give an account of the proceedings of general Hull.
10. What were the consequences of his surrender?
11. What measures were taken?
12. Give an account of the battle of the river Raisin.
13. What followed the battle?
14. What was done on the Niagara frontier?
15. Give an account of the battle of Queenstown.
16. What expeditions were undertaken by general Smyth?
17. What events tended to relieve the mortification of the Americans?
18. By whom was the Guerriere captured? give an account of the engagement?
19. What other naval victories? give an account of them?
20. What effect produced by these victories?
21. What measures taken by congress?
22. What measures for procuring peace?
23. What measures taken by the British government?
24. Who commanded in the Chesapeake?
25. What was the conduct of his squadron?
26. What other blockades?
27. What naval actions fought?
28. Give an account of the Chesapeake and Shannon.
29. What other naval actions?
30. In what new war was the United States involved?
31. By whom were the Creeks instigated? how did the war begin?
32. What measure taken by Georgia and Tennessee?
33. With what success?
34. Give an account of the battle of the Great Bend.
35. What followed this battle?
36. What expedition undertaken by general Dearborn?

37. Give an account of the battle of Stony Brook ;—of the Beaver Dams.
38. Who succeeded Dearborn ? what expedition undertaken by him ? give an account of it.
39. Where did the events occur most honorable to the American arms ?
40. Give an account of the proceedings of Harrison ; — of the attack on fort Stevenson.
41. Give an account of Perry's proceedings.
42. Describe the battle of lake Erie.
43. What step taken by Harrison in consequence of this victory ?
44. Describe the battle of the Thames.
45. What was the consequence of this victory ?

## CHAPTER XXIV.

1. What changes had taken place in the armies of the United States ? in the situation of Great Britain ?
2. What reinforcements were sent to America ?
3. Describe the battle of Chippewa.
4. Give an account of the battle of Niagara.
5. Describe the attack on fort Erie ; — the sortie from the fort.
6. Give an account of Prevost's proceedings.
7. Describe the naval battle of lake Champlain.
8. What did Prevost do after the loss of the fleet ?
9. What expedition of the British was the most successful ?
10. Give an account of it.
11. What induced the British to proceed up the Patuxent ?
12. What attempt was made to defend Washington ?
13. What was the fate of the city ? of Alexandria ?
14. What attempt was next made by the British ?
15. What preparations had been made for defending Baltimore ?
16. What was the result of the expedition ?
17. What other incursions were made by the British ?
18. What naval actions fought ?
19. Against what place was the last effort of the British directed ?
20. To whom was the defence of New Orleans entrusted ?
21. What measures of defence were taken ?
22. What were the movements of the British army ?
23. Describe the battle of New Orleans.
24. Where and when was peace concluded ?
25. With what feelings was the news received ?
26. Under what embarrassments did the government labor ?
27. What is said of the Hartford convention ?
28. What were the results of the war ?

## CHAPTER XXV.

1. What measures were taken by congress on the arrival of the news of peace ?

2. Who was sent into the Mediterranean ?
  3. For what purpose ?
  4. Give an account of his proceedings.
  5. What institution established by congress ?
  6. Give an account of the state of the currency.
  7. Who succeeded Mr Madison ?
  8. What causes tended to produce emigration ?
  9. What new states admitted into the union ?
  10. When and where were the first settlements made in Illinois ?
  11. Give an account of its subsequent history.
  12. What is said of the early history of Mississippi ?
  13. Give an account of Illinois — of Alabama.
  14. What subject discussed when Missouri was admitted ?
  15. What addition to the territory of the United States ?
  16. What was the reason for this cession ?
  17. What advantages result from it ?
  18. For what class of persons did congress make a provision ? to what amount ?
  19. Who were the candidates for the presidency at the expiration of Mr Monroe's term ?
  20. What was the event of the election ?
  21. What is said of Mr Adams' administration ? who was his successor ?
-















0 011 563 964 A